

**IMPORTANT**

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE

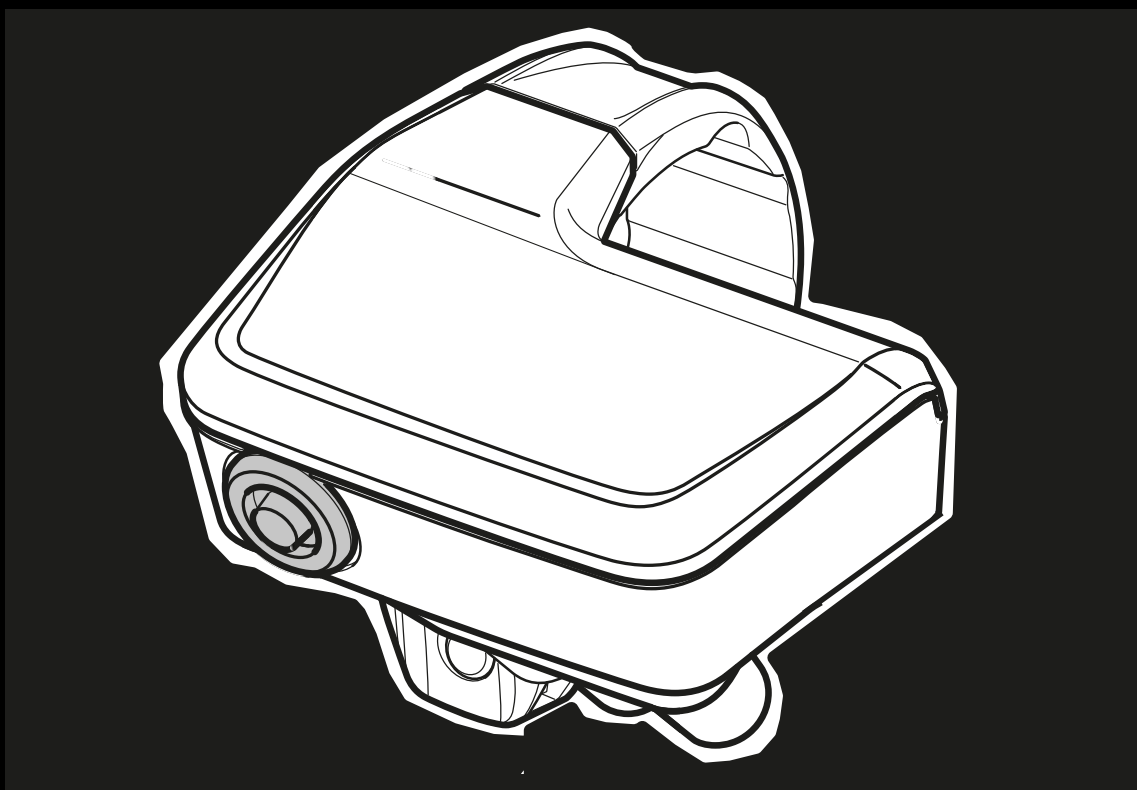
KEEP SAFE TO CONSULT AT A LATER DATE



**HERCULES**

**SHIMANO**

Translation of original operating instructions for  
HERCULES pedelecs with SHIMANO SC-E800  
on-board computer



NOS FS 2.1

22-R-0001

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>About these operating instructions</b>	
1.1	Manufacturer	10
1.2	Laws, standards and directives	10
1.3	Language	10
1.4	For your information	10
1.4.1	Warnings	10
1.4.2	Markups	10
1.5	Type number and model	11
1.6	Frame number	11
1.7	Identifying the operating instructions	11
1.8	Aim of the operating instructions	12
<b>2</b>	<b>Safety</b>	
2.1	Residual risks	13
2.1.1	Risk of fire and explosion	13
2.1.1.1	Rechargeable battery	13
2.1.1.2	Overheated charger	13
2.1.1.3	Hot components	13
2.1.2	Electric shock	14
2.1.2.1	Damage	14
2.1.2.2	Water penetration	14
2.1.2.3	Condensation	14
2.1.3	Risk of a crash	14
2.1.3.1	Incorrect quick release setting	14
2.1.3.2	Incorrect tightening torque	14
2.1.3.3	Incorrect component	14
2.1.4	Risk of amputation	14
2.1.5	Key breaking off	14
2.1.6	Malfunctions due to Bluetooth®	15
2.2	Toxic substances	16
2.2.1	Brake fluid	16
2.2.2	Suspension oil	16
2.2.3	Lubrication oil	16
2.2.4	Defective battery	16
2.3	Requirements for riders	16
2.4	Vulnerable groups	16
2.5	Personal protective equipment	16
2.6	Safety guards	16
2.7	Safety markings and safety instructions	17
2.8	What to do in an emergency	17
2.8.1	Dangerous situation in road traffic	17
2.8.2	Leaked brake fluid	17
2.8.3	Battery vapours emitted	18
2.8.4	Battery fire	18
2.8.5	Oil and lubricant leaks from the rear frame damper	18
2.8.6	Oil and lubricant leaks from the fork	18
<b>3</b>	<b>Description</b>	
3.1	Proper use	19
3.1.1	Improper use	20
3.1.2	Permitted total weight (PTW)	21
3.1.3	Environmental requirements	22
3.2	Nameplate	24
3.3	Components	25
3.3.1	Overview	25

---

3.3.2	Chassis	26
3.3.2.1	Frame	26
3.3.2.2	Steering system	26
3.3.2.3	Steering headset	26
3.3.2.4	Stem	26
3.3.2.5	Handlebars	27
3.3.2.6	Fork	27
3.3.3	Suspension	28
3.3.3.1	Suspension fork	28
3.3.3.2	Rear frame damper	32
3.3.3.3	RockShox rear frame damper	35
3.3.4	Wheel	36
3.3.4.1	Tyres	36
3.3.4.2	Rim	36
3.3.4.3	Valve	36
3.3.4.4	Spoke	37
3.3.4.5	Spoke nipples	37
3.3.4.6	Hub	37
3.3.5	Braking system	38
3.3.5.1	Mechanical brake	38
3.3.5.2	Hydraulic brake	38
3.3.5.3	Disc brake	39
3.3.6	Seat post	40
3.3.6.1	Patent seat post	40
3.3.6.2	Suspension seat post	40
3.3.7	Mechanical drive system	41
3.3.7.1	Chain drive layout	41
3.3.7.2	Belt drive layout	41
3.3.8	Electric drive system	42
3.3.8.1	Motor	42
3.3.8.2	Battery	42
3.3.8.3	Rechargeable battery	43
3.3.9	Riding light	43
3.3.10	Charger	43
3.3.10.1	On-board computer	44
3.3.10.2	Control panel	44
3.4	Description of controls and screens	45
3.4.1	Handlebars	45
3.4.2	On-board computer	46
3.4.2.1	Main screen	46
3.4.3	Warnings and errors	48
3.4.3.1	Warnings	48
3.4.3.2	Error messages	48
3.4.4	Gear shift	49
3.4.4.1	Control panel functions on right	49
3.4.5	Hand brake	51
3.4.6	Battery level indicator (battery)	52
3.5	Technical data	53
3.5.1	Pedelec	53
3.5.2	SHIMANO EP8 DU-EP800 motor	53
3.5.3	SHIMANO SC-EM800 on-board computer	53
3.5.4	Emissions	53
3.5.5	Rechargeable battery	53
3.5.5.1	Simple TP-500	53
3.5.5.2	Simple TP-630	53
3.5.6	FIT Fast Charger (36-6/230)	54
3.5.7	Tightening torques	55

<b>4</b>	<b>Transporting and storing</b>	
4.1	Weight and dimensions for transportation	57
4.2	Designated handles, lifting points	57
4.3	Transportation	58
4.3.1	Using the brake transport securing system	58
4.3.2	Transporting the pedelec	58
4.3.3	Shipping a pedelec	58
4.3.4	Transporting the battery	58
4.3.5	Shipping the battery	58
4.4	Storing	59
4.4.1	Break in operation	59
4.4.1.1	Preparing a break in operation	59
4.4.1.2	Carrying out a break in operation	59
<b>5</b>	<b>Assembly</b>	
5.1	Unpacking	60
5.2	Required tools	60
5.3	Commissioning	61
5.3.1	Checking the battery	61
5.3.2	Preparing the wheel	62
5.3.3	Preparing the LIMOTEC seat post	63
5.3.4	Fitting the pedals	64
5.3.5	Checking the stem and handlebars	65
5.3.5.1	Checking the connections	65
5.3.5.2	Checking stem is firmly in position	65
5.3.5.3	Checking the headset backlash	65
5.4	Pedelec sale	65
<b>6</b>	<b>Operation</b>	
6.1	Risks and hazards	66
6.2	Tips for a greater range	68
6.3	Error messages	69
6.3.1	Battery error message	69
6.3.2	On-board computer warnings	70
6.4	Error message screen	71
6.5	Instruction and customer service	72
6.6	Adjusting the pedelec	72
6.6.1	Preparing	72
6.6.2	Pedelec adjustment procedure	73
6.6.3	Determining the sitting position	74
6.6.4	Adjusting the saddle	75
6.6.4.1	Straightening the saddle	75
6.6.4.2	Adjusting the saddle height	75
6.6.4.3	Setting the saddle height with the remote control	76
6.6.4.4	Adjusting the saddle position	77
6.6.4.5	Adjusting the saddle tilt	77
6.6.4.6	Checking saddle stability	77
6.6.5	Handlebars	78
6.6.5.1	Handlebar width	78
6.6.5.2	Hand position	78
6.6.5.3	Adjusting the handlebars	78
6.6.6	Stem	79
6.6.6.1	Adjusting the handlebar height with quick release	79
6.6.6.2	Setting the quill stem	80
6.6.6.3	Adjusting the Ahead stem	80
6.6.6.4	Adjusting the angle-adjustable stem	81
6.6.7	Ergonomic handles	82
6.6.7.1	Checking handlebar stability	82

---

6.6.8	Tyres	83
6.6.9	Brake	84
6.6.9.1	Brake handle position	84
6.6.9.2	Brake handle tilt angle	84
6.6.9.3	Determining the grip distance	85
6.6.9.4	Grip distance on a SHIMANO ST-EF41 brake lever	86
6.6.9.5	Retracting the brake linings	87
6.6.10	Gear shift	88
6.6.10.1	SHIMANO shifter	88
6.6.11	Suspension	89
6.6.12	Fork sag	89
6.6.12.1	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX fork coil spring with spacer for pre-tensioning	90
6.6.12.2	Adjusting the RockShox coil spring with an external preload adjuster	92
6.6.12.3	ROCKSHOX Paragon Silver coil spring	93
6.6.12.4	Adjusting the RockShox fork air suspension	95
6.6.13	Adjust the rear frame damper sag	97
6.6.13.1	Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper	98
6.6.14	Fork rebound damping	100
6.6.14.1	Adjusting the RockShox suspension fork	101
6.6.15	Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper	102
6.6.15.1	Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper	103
6.6.16	Compression adjuster on rear frame damper	104
6.6.16.1	Adjusting the RockShox compression adjuster	105
6.6.17	Lighting	106
6.6.17.1	Adjusting the lights	106
6.6.18	Adjust on-board computer	108
6.6.19	Opening the settings menu	109
6.6.20	Closing the settings menu	110
6.6.20.1	Sets the language	110
6.6.20.2	Setting units	110
6.6.20.3	Changing the displayed speed	110
6.6.20.4	Adjusting the clock	111
6.6.20.5	Changing the brightness	111
6.6.20.6	Changing the beep sound	111
6.6.20.7	Automatic light setting	112
6.6.20.8	Adjusting the start gear	112
6.6.20.9	Changing level of assistance	112
6.6.20.10	Adjusts the gear shift	113
6.6.20.11	RD protection reset	113
6.6.20.12	Deleting all saved values	114
6.6.21	Connecting an external device	114
6.6.21.1	Connecting device via the ANT	114
6.6.21.2	Connecting the device via Bluetooth® LE	114
6.7	Connect external devices	115
6.7.1	Connect via Bluetooth® LE	115
6.7.2	Connect via ANT	115
6.8	Using E-TUBE PROJECT	115
6.9	Accessories	116
6.9.1	Child seat	116
6.9.2	Trailer	117
6.9.2.1	Approval for trailer with Enviolo hub	117
6.9.2.2	Approval for trailer with ROHLOFF hub	118
6.9.3	Mobile holder	118
6.9.4	Tubeless and airless tyres	118
6.9.5	Suspension fork coil spring	118
6.9.6	Pannier rack	118
6.9.7	Panniers and cargo boxes	118
6.10	Personal protective equipment and accessories for road safety	119
6.11	Before each ride	119

6.12	Straightening the quickly adjustable stem	120
6.13	Using the pannier rack	120
6.14	Raising the kickstand	121
6.15	Using the saddle	121
6.15.1	Using the leather saddle	121
6.16	Using the pedals	121
6.17	Using the multifunctional handlebars or bar ends	121
6.17.1	Using leather handles	121
6.18	Using the bell	121
6.19	Rechargeable battery	122
6.19.0.1	Removing the battery	122
6.19.0.2	Inserting the battery	122
6.19.1	Charging the battery	123
6.20	Using pedelec with the electric drive system	124
6.20.1	Switching on the electric drive system	124
6.20.2	Switching off the electric drive system	124
6.21	Using the on-board computer	125
6.21.1	Using the riding light	126
6.21.2	Selecting the level of assistance	126
6.21.3	Using the push assist system	127
6.21.3.1	Select WALK level of assistance	127
6.21.3.2	Switching on the push assist	127
6.21.3.3	Switching off the push assist	127
6.21.3.4	Exit WALK level of assistance	127
6.21.4	Switching the journey information	127
6.22	Brake	128
6.22.1	Using the brake lever	128
6.23	Suspension and damping	129
6.23.0.1	Adjusting the RockShox compression adjuster	130
6.24	Gear shift	131
6.24.1	Using the derailleur gears	131
6.25	Parking	132
6.25.1	Screwing in the All Up handlebars	132
<b>7</b>	<b>Cleaning, servicing and maintenance</b>	
7.1	Before each ride	138
7.1.1	Checking the guards	138
7.1.2	Checking the frame	138
7.1.3	Checking the fork	138
7.1.4	Checking the rear frame damper	138
7.1.5	Checking the pannier rack	138
7.1.6	Checking the guards	138
7.1.7	Checking wheel concentricity	138
7.1.8	Checking the quick releases	138
7.1.9	Checking the suspension seat post	138
7.1.10	Checking the bell	139
7.1.11	Checking the handles	139
7.1.12	Checking the USB cover	139
7.1.13	Checking the lighting	139
7.1.14	Checking the brake	139
7.2	After each ride	140
7.2.1	Cleaning the lights and reflectors	140
7.2.2	Cleaning the suspension fork	140
7.2.3	Caring for the suspension fork	140
7.2.4	Cleaning the pedals	140
7.2.5	Cleaning the brake	140
7.2.6	Cleaning the suspension seat post	140
7.2.7	Cleaning the rear frame damper	140
7.3	Basic cleaning	141

7.3.1	On-board computer and control panel	141
7.3.2	Rechargeable battery	141
7.3.3	Motor	141
7.3.4	Frame, fork, pannier rack, guards and kickstand	142
7.3.5	Stem	142
7.3.6	Handlebars	142
7.3.7	Handles	142
7.3.7.1	Leather handles	142
7.3.8	Seat post	142
7.3.9	Saddle	142
7.3.9.1	Leather saddle	143
7.3.10	Tyres	143
7.3.11	Spokes and spoke nipples	143
7.3.12	Hub	143
7.3.13	Switching elements	143
7.3.13.1	Shifter	143
7.3.14	Cassette, chain wheels and front derailleur	143
7.3.15	Brake	144
7.3.15.1	Brake lever	144
7.3.16	Brake disc	144
7.3.17	Belt	144
7.3.18	Chain	144
7.3.18.1	Chain with all-round chain guard	144
7.4	Servicing	145
7.4.1	Frame	145
7.4.2	Fork	145
7.4.3	Pannier rack	146
7.4.4	Mudguard	146
7.4.5	Servicing the kickstand	146
7.4.6	Stem	146
7.4.7	Handlebars	146
7.4.8	Handle	146
7.4.8.1	Rubber handles	146
7.4.8.2	Leather handle	146
7.4.9	Seat post	147
7.4.9.1	Suspension seat post	147
7.4.9.2	Carbon seat post	147
7.4.10	Rim	147
7.4.11	Leather saddle	147
7.4.12	Hub	147
7.4.13	Spoke nipples	147
7.4.14	Gear shift	148
7.4.14.1	Rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheels	148
7.4.14.2	Shifter	148
7.4.15	Pedal	148
7.4.16	Caring for the chain	148
7.4.16.1	Caring for the chain and all-round chain guard	149
7.4.17	Caring for the battery	149
7.4.18	Caring for the brake	149
7.4.18.1	Caring for the brake	149
7.4.19	Lubricating the Eightpins seat post tube	149
7.5	Maintenance	150
7.5.1	Wheel	150
7.5.1.1	Checking the tyre pressure	150
7.5.1.2	Checking the tyres	152
7.5.1.3	Checking the rims	153
7.5.1.4	Checking the nipple holes	153
7.5.1.5	Checking the nipple well	153
7.5.1.6	Checking the rim hooks	153

7.5.1.7	Checking the spokes	153
7.5.2	Checking the brake system	154
7.5.2.1	Checking the hand brake	154
7.5.2.2	Checking the hydraulic system	154
7.5.2.3	Checking the Bowden cables	154
7.5.2.4	Checking the disc brake	155
7.5.3	Checking the lighting	156
7.5.4	Checking the stem	157
7.5.5	Check the handlebars	157
7.5.6	Checking the saddle	157
7.5.7	Checking the seat post	157
7.5.8	Checking the chain	157
7.5.9	Checking the chain and belt tension	157
7.5.9.1	Checking the derailleur gears	158
7.5.9.2	Checking the hub gear	158
7.5.10	Checking the gear shift	158
7.5.10.1	Electric gear shift	158
7.5.10.2	Mechanical gear shift	158
7.5.10.3	Checking the derailleur gears	158
7.5.11	Adjusting gear shift	159
7.5.11.1	ROHLOFF hub	159
7.5.12	Bowden-cable-operated gear shift, single-cable	159
7.5.13	Bowden-cable-operated gear shift, dual-cable	159
7.5.14	Bowden-cable-operated twist grip, dual-cable	160
7.5.15	Checking kickstand stability	160

## 8 Maintenance

8.1	Initial inspection	161
8.2	Maintenance	161
8.3	Component-specific maintenance tasks	161
8.4	Carry out initial inspection	164
8.5	Maintenance instructions	165
8.5.1	Servicing the frame	172
8.5.1.1	Servicing the carbon frame	172
8.5.2	Checking the pannier rack	172
8.5.3	Servicing axle with quick release	172
8.5.4	Maintaining the stem	173
8.5.5	Servicing the gear hub	173
8.5.5.1	Adjusting the hub with cone bearing	173
8.5.6	Servicing the steering headset	174
8.5.7	Servicing the fork	174
8.5.7.1	Servicing the carbon suspension fork	175
8.5.7.2	Servicing the suspension fork	175
8.5.8	Servicing seat post	176
8.5.8.1	Servicing the carbon seat post	176
8.5.8.2	by.schulz suspension seat post	177
8.5.8.3	Suntour suspension seat post	177
8.5.8.4	eightpins NGS2 seat post	178
8.5.8.5	eightpins H01 seat post	184
8.5.9	Rear frame damper	188
8.5.9.1	FOX component-specific maintenance	189

## 9 Troubleshooting, fault clearance and repair

9.1	Troubleshooting and fault clearance	190
9.1.1	The drive system or display do not start up	190
9.1.2	RD protection reset	190
9.1.3	Warning messages and LEDs	190
9.2	Assistance function	191
9.3	Rechargeable battery	192



---

9.4	Lighting	193
9.4.1	On-board computer error	193
9.5	Miscellaneous	194
9.5.1	RockShox suspension fork	195
9.5.1.1	Rebound too fast	195
9.5.1.2	Rebounding too slowly	196
9.5.1.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	197
9.5.1.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	198
9.5.2	RockShox rear frame damper	199
9.5.2.1	Rebound too fast	199
9.5.2.2	Rebounding too slowly	200
9.5.2.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	201
9.5.2.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	202
9.6	Repair	203
9.6.1	Original parts and lubricants	203
9.6.2	Replacing the lighting	203
9.6.3	Setting the front light	203
9.6.4	Checking tyre clearance	203
<b>10</b>	<b>Recycling and disposal</b>	
10.1	Removal of waste guidelines	204
<b>11</b>	<b>Documents</b>	
11.1	Assembly report	206
11.2	Maintenance log	208
11.2.1	Nos FS 2.1	212
<b>12</b>	<b>Glossary</b>	
12.1	Abbreviations	217
12.2	Simplified terms	217
<b>13</b>	<b>Appendix</b>	
I.	Translation of the original EC/EU Declaration of Conformity	218
1.1	Declaration of Conformity for incomplete machine	219
1.2	RED Declaration of Conformity	221
<b>14</b>	<b>Keyword index</b>	

## Thank you for your trust!

HERCULES pedelecs are premium quality bicycles. You have made an excellent choice. Your specialist dealer will provide you with guidance and instruction and assemble your product. Your specialist dealer will also be happy to assist you in the future, whether you require maintenance, conversion or repair.

You are receiving these operating instructions with your new pedelec. Please take time to become familiar with your new pedelec. Use the tips and suggestions in the operating instructions. They will help you to enjoy your pedelec for a long time to come. We hope you have fun and wish you well on all of your rides!

Download the operating instructions onto your phone at the following link, so that you can use them when you are out riding:



<https://www.hercules-bikes.de/de/de/index/downloads.html>.

## Copyright

© HERCULES GmbH

Distribution or reproduction of these operating instructions and utilisation or communication of their content is prohibited unless expressly approved. Any infringement will render the offender liable for compensation. All rights reserved in the event that a patent, utility model or industrial design is registered.

## Subject to internal changes

The information contained in these *operating instructions* are the approved technical specifications at the time of printing. In addition to the functions described here, software changes may be introduced to rectify errors and extend functions at any time.

Any significant changes are included in a new published version of the operating instructions. All changes to the operating instructions are published on the following website:

<https://www.hercules-bikes.de/de/de/index/downloads.html>

## Editing

Text and images:  
ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG  
Longericher Strasse 2  
50739 Köln, Germany

## Translation

RKT Übersetzungs- und Dokumentations-GmbH  
Bahnhofstrasse 27  
78713 Schramberg, Germany

**In case of any questions or problems regarding these operating instructions, please contact:**

[tecdoc@hercules-bike.de](mailto:tecdoc@hercules-bike.de)

# 1 About these operating instructions

## 1.1 Manufacturer

HERCULES GMBH  
Longericher Straße 2  
50739 Köln, Germany

Tel.: +49 4473 92617 0  
Fax: +49 4473 92617 29  
Email: info@hercules-bikes.de

## 1.2 Laws, standards and directives

The *operating instructions* comply with the essential requirements specified in:

- Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC
- Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU
- ISO 20607:2018 Safety of machinery– Operating instructions– General drafting principles
- EN 15194:2018 Cycles – Electrically power assisted cycles – pedelec bicycles
- EN 11243:2016, Cycles – Luggage carriers for bicycles – Requirements and test methods
- ISO 17100:2016-05 Translation Services – Requirements for translation services.

## 1.3 Language

The *original operating instructions* are written in German. A translation is invalid without the *original operating instructions*.

## 1.4 For your information

Different markings are used in the operating instructions to make them easier to read.

### 1.4.1 Warnings

Warnings indicate hazardous situations and actions. You will find three warnings in the operating instructions:



**WARNING**

May lead to serious or even fatal injuries if ignored. Medium-risk hazard.



**CAUTION**

May lead to minor or moderate injuries if ignored. Low-risk hazard.

**Notice**

May lead to material damage if ignored.

### 1.4.2 Markups

You will find ten text markups in the operating instructions:

Stylised form	Use
<i>Italics</i>	Glossary term, first mention in section
<u>Underlined in blue</u>	Link
<u>Underlined in grey</u>	Cross references
✓	Requirements
▶	Instructions for actions without specific order
1	Instructions for actions in specified order
⇒	Result of action step
BLOCKED	On-board computer indicators
•	Bulleted lists
<u>Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment</u>	Each type has a different kind of equipment. A note beneath the heading indicates components which can be used as an alternative.

Table 1: Markups

## 1.5 Type number and model

These operating instructions are an integral part of pedelecs with the type numbers:

Type no.	Model	Pedelec type
22-R-0001	NOS FS 2.1	Mountain bike

**Table 2: Type number, model and pedelec type**

## 1.6 Frame number

Each frame has an individual frame number stamped on it (see Figure 2). The frame number can be used to associate the pedelec with the owner. The frame number is the most important identifier for verifying ownership.

## 1.7 Identifying the operating instructions

The operating instructions identification number is located in bottom left-hand corner of each page.

The identification number is composed of the document number, the version number and the release date.

<b>Identification number</b>	MY22H03 - 32_1.0_04.10.2021
------------------------------	-----------------------------

## 1.8 Aim of the operating instructions

These operating instructions are not a substitute for personal instruction by the specialist dealer supplying the bike. These operating instructions are an integral part of the pedelec. Therefore, if it is re-sold at a later time, they must be handed over to the subsequent owner.

These operating instructions are mainly designed for riders and operators of the pedelec.

Paragraphs with a white background are intended to enable non-professionals to make safe settings on the pedelec, use it, clean it and identify and eliminate any faults.



Sections intended for technical staff are highlighted in blue and marked with a spanner symbol.

These paragraphs aim to allow trained technical staff (bicycle mechatronics engineers, bicycle mechanics or similar) to carry out initial assembly, adjustment, maintenance and repair safely.

Technical staff also need to read all sections for riders and operators to ensure they can provide a better customer service.

All documents in Section 11 need to be filled out whenever any work is performed on the vehicle (assembly report, maintenance report).

Section		Rider	Specialist dealer
1	About these instructions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Safety	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Description	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Transportation and storage	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Assembly and installation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Operation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Cleaning and servicing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Maintenance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.1	Troubleshooting and fault clearance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.2	Repair	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Disassembly and disposal	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Documents	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Glossary	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Appendix	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Keyword index	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Table 3: Target groups-section matrix

## 2 Safety

### 2.1 Residual risks

#### 2.1.1 Risk of fire and explosion

##### 2.1.1.1 Rechargeable battery

The safety electronics may fail if the batteries are damaged or faulty. The residual voltage can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Only use and charge the battery and accessories if they are in perfect condition.
- ▶ Never open or repair the battery.
- ▶ Batteries with external damage must be removed from service immediately.
- ▶ If a battery is dropped or struck, remove it from service and keep it under observation for at least 24 hours.

If a charger is connected to the drive system when the drive system reports a critical error, the battery may be damaged permanently and may catch fire.

- ▶ Connect charger to error-free drive system only.

The battery is only protected from spray water. Penetration by water can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Never immerse battery in water.
- ▶ Take battery out of service if you suspect water has penetrated it.

Temperatures over 60 °C can also cause liquid to leak from the battery and the battery will become damaged. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Protect the battery against heat.
- ▶ Never store next to hot objects.
- ▶ Never expose battery to continuous direct sunlight.
- ▶ Avoid wide temperature fluctuations.

Chargers with excessive voltage damage batteries. This may cause a fire or an explosion.

- ▶ Only use approved batteries to charge.

Metal objects may interconnect the battery's electrical terminals. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Never insert paper clips, screws, coins, keys and other small parts into the battery.
- ▶ Place the battery on clean surfaces only. Prevent charging socket and contacts against contamination from dirt, sand and similar.

Faulty batteries are hazardous goods.

- ▶ Dispose of faulty batteries in the correct manner.
- ▶ Store battery in a dry place until disposal.
- ▶ Never store near flammable substances.

##### 2.1.1.2 Overheated charger

The charger heats up when charging the battery. If the battery is not allowed to cool down sufficiently, it can cause a fire or burns to the hands.

- ▶ Never use charger on a highly flammable surface.
- ▶ Never cover the charger during charging.
- ▶ Never leave battery unattended during charging.

##### 2.1.1.3 Hot components

The brakes and the motor may become very hot during operation. There is a risk of burns or fire in case of contact.

- ▶ Never touch the brakes or the motor immediately after a ride.
- ▶ Never place the pedelec on a flammable surface, such as grass or wood, directly after use.

## 2.1.2 Electric shock

### 2.1.2.1 Damage

Damaged chargers, cables and plug connectors increase the risk of electric shock.

- ▶ Check the charger, cable and plug connector before each use. Never use a damaged charger.

### 2.1.2.2 Water penetration

If water penetrates into the charger, there is a risk of electric shock.

- ▶ Never charge the battery outdoors.

### 2.1.2.3 Condensation

Condensation may form in the charger and battery when the temperature changes from cold to hot, causing a short circuit.

- ▶ Wait until both charger and battery are at room temperature before connecting them.

## 2.1.3 Risk of a crash

### 2.1.3.1 Incorrect quick release setting

Excessively high clamping force will damage the quick release and cause it to lose its function. Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. This can cause components to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).
- ▶ Only use the clamping lever with the specified set clamping force.

### 2.1.3.2 Incorrect tightening torque

If a screw is fastened too tightly, it may break. If a screw is not fastened enough, it may loosen. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Always observe the indicated tightening torque on the screw or in the *operating instructions*.

### 2.1.3.3 Incorrect component

The wheels are designed exclusively for use with rim brakes or disc brakes. The wheel may break if an incorrect brake is used. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never use the wheel with a different brake.

## 2.1.4 Risk of amputation

The brake disc in disc brakes is so sharp that it can cause serious injuries to fingers if they are inserted into the brake disc openings.

- ▶ Always keep fingers well away from the rotating brake discs.

## 2.1.5 Key breaking off

If you leave a key inserted when riding or transporting the pedelec, it may break off or the locking system may open accidentally.

- ▶ Remove the key to the battery lock.

### 2.1.6 Malfunctions due to Bluetooth®

If you use the on-board computer with Bluetooth® and/or Wi-Fi®, it may cause interference with other devices, other equipment, aircraft and medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Likewise, harm to people and animals in the immediate vicinity cannot be completely excluded.

- ▶ Never use the pedelec with Bluetooth® when in close proximity to medical devices, filling stations, chemical plants, areas at risk of explosion and in blasting zones.
- ▶ Never use pedelec with Bluetooth® in aircraft.
- ▶ Avoid operating for longer periods in close proximity to the body.



## 2.2 Toxic substances

### 2.2.1 Brake fluid

Brake fluid may leak out after an accident or due to material fatigue. Brake fluid can be fatal if swallowed or inhaled.

- ▶ Never dismantle the brake system.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapours.

### 2.2.2 Suspension oil

Suspension oil in the fork and the rear frame damper is toxic to the touch, irritates respiratory tracts and can cause cancer, sterility and changes to the genetic make-up of germ cells.

- ▶ Never dismantle the rear frame damper or the suspension fork.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with suspension oil.

### 2.2.3 Lubrication oil

Eightpins seat post lubrication oil is toxic if inhaled and can be fatal if swallowed.

- ▶ Never remove the eightpins seat post from the frame.
- ▶ Lubricate seat post in the open air or in a well-ventilated room only.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with lubrication oil. Wear nitrile gloves when lubricating, cleaning and servicing the vehicle.

### 2.2.4 Defective battery

Liquids and vapours may leak from damaged or faulty batteries. Excessively high temperatures may also cause liquids and vapours to leak from the battery. Such liquids and vapours can irritate the airways and cause burns.

- ▶ Never dismantle the battery.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapours.

## 2.3 Requirements for riders

The rider must have the required mental capacity and physical and motor skills to ride on public roads. A minimum age of 14 years is recommended.

## 2.4 Vulnerable groups

Keep batteries and the charger away from children and people with reduced physical, sensory or mental capacities or lacking in experience and knowledge.

If minors use the pedelec, a legal guardian must should provide them with comprehensive instructions.

## 2.5 Personal protective equipment

Wear a suitable helmet for your protection. The helmet must have a reflective strip or a light in a clearly visible colour.

Wear sturdy shoes.

Clothing should be retroreflective or as light as possible. Fluorescent materials are also suitable. High-visibility jackets and straps on your upper body ensure even greater safety. Never wear a skirt. Always wear trousers which reach down to your ankles instead.

## 2.6 Safety guards

Three safety guards protect riders against heat or moving parts:

- Chain or belt guards prevent clothing from being pulled into the drive train
- Mudguards protect against dirt and water splashing up from the road.
- Motor covers on the motor casing protect against heat.

- ▶ Never remove the guards.
- ▶ Check the guards on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take pedelec out of service if a guard is damaged or missing. Contact specialist dealer.

## 2.7 Safety markings and safety instructions

The pedelec and battery nameplates contain these safety markings and safety instructions:



Symbol	Explanation
	General warning
	Adhere to the instructions for use

Table 4: Meaning of safety markings












Symbol	Explanation
	Read the instructions
	Separate collection of electrical and electronic devices
	Separate collection of ordinary and rechargeable batteries
	Must not be thrown into fire (burning prohibited)
	It is forbidden to open any batteries
	Device of protection class II
	Only suitable for use indoors
	Fuse (device fuse)
	EU conformity
	Recyclable material
	Protect from temperatures above 50 °C and direct sunlight

Table 5: Safety instructions

## 2.8 What to do in an emergency

### 2.8.1 Dangerous situation in road traffic

- ▶ In the event of any hazards or dangers in road traffic, apply the brakes on the pedelec until it comes to a halt. The brake acts as an emergency stop system in such cases.

### 2.8.2 Leaked brake fluid

- ▶ Remove those affected from the danger area to fresh air.
- ▶ Never leave those affected unattended.
- ▶ Remove any clothing contaminated with brake fluid immediately.
- ▶ Never inhale vapours. Ensure sufficient ventilation.
- ▶ Wear gloves and safety gloves as protective equipment.
- ▶ Keep unprotected persons away.
- ▶ Take care with leaked brake fluid as it poses a slip hazard.
- ▶ Keep leaking brake fluid away from naked flames, hot surfaces and sources of ignition.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

#### After inhalation

- ▶ Take in fresh air. Immediately consult a doctor in case of any discomfort.

#### After skin contact

- ▶ Wash affected skin with soap and water and rinse well. Remove contaminated clothing. Consult doctor in the event of pain or discomfort.

#### After contact with eyes

- ▶ Rinse eyes under flowing water for at least ten minutes with the lids open; also rinse under lids. Immediately consult a doctor in case of any pain or discomfort.

**After swallowing**

- ▶ Rinse out mouth with water. Never induce vomiting. Risk of aspiration.
- ▶ If a person is lying on their back and vomiting, place them in the recovery position. Seek medical advice immediately.

**Environmental protection measures**

- ▶ Never allow brake fluid to flow into the sewage system, water courses or groundwater.
- ▶ Notify the relevant authorities if fluid penetrates the ground, water courses or the sewage system.
- ▶ Dispose of leaked brake fluid in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations (see [Section 10.1](#)).
- ▶ The brake system must be repaired immediately if brake fluid leaks out. Contact specialist dealer.

**2.8.3 Battery vapours emitted**

Vapours may be emitted if the battery is damaged or used improperly. The vapours may cause respiratory tract irritation.

- ▶ Get into fresh air.
- ▶ Consult doctor in the event of pain or discomfort.

**After contact with eyes**

- ▶ Carefully rinse eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Protect unaffected eye. Seek medical advice immediately.

**After skin contact**

- ▶ Remove any solid particles immediately.
- ▶ Rinse the affected area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Then dab the affected skin gently. Do not rub dry.
- ▶ Remove contaminated clothing immediately.
- ▶ Immediately consult a doctor if there is any redness, pain or discomfort.

**2.8.4 Battery fire**

The safety electronics may fail if the battery is damaged or faulty. The residual voltage can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- 1 Keep your distance if the battery becomes deformed or starts to emit smoke.
  - 2 If charging, remove the plug connector from the socket.
  - 3 Contact the fire service immediately.
- ▶ Use Class fire extinguishers to put out the fire.
  - ▶ Never extinguish damaged batteries with water or allow them to come into contact with water.

Inhaling vapours can cause intoxication.

- ▶ Stand on the side of the fire where the wind is blowing from.
- ▶ Use breathing apparatus if possible.

**2.8.5 Oil and lubricant leaks from the rear frame damper**

- ▶ Dispose of leaked oils and lubricants in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations (see [Section 10.1](#)).
- ▶ Contact specialist dealer.

**2.8.6 Oil and lubricant leaks from the fork**

- ▶ Dispose of leaked oils and lubricants in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations (see [Section 10.1](#)).

## 3 Description

### 3.1 Proper use

All check lists and instructions for actions in these operating instructions must be met. Approved accessories can be installed by specialist staff.

Use the pedelec when it is in perfect, proper working order only. National requirements may apply to the pedelec which the standard equipment may not meet. Different regulations apply across the country to the riding light, reflectors and other components when riding on public roads. The general laws and the

regulations for the prevention of accidents and environmental protection in the respective country of use must be adhered to.

The rechargeable batteries are designed to supply power to the pedelec motor only. Never use the batteries for other purposes.

Each pedelec is assigned a pedelec type, which determines its proper use, function and area of use.







City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
					
<p>City and trekking bicycles are designed for comfortable, daily use and are suitable for riding on public roads.</p>	<p>Cycles for children and young adults are suitable for riding on public roads.</p> <p>Legal guardians must read the operating instructions before putting the bike into use. Tell children and young people what the operating instructions contain in a way appropriate to their age.</p> <p>Check the size of the pedelec every 3 months for orthopaedic reasons.</p> <p>Check compliance with the maximum permitted total weight (PTW) every 3 months.</p>	<p>Mountain bikes are designed for sports use. The design characteristics include a short wheelbase, a sitting position with the rider inclined towards the front, and a brake requiring low actuation force.</p> <p>Mountain bikes are sports bikes and not a means of transport. They require an adaptation period in addition to physical fitness. Learning how to ride a mountain bike takes practice, especially braking and riding around bends.</p> <p>The strain on hands, wrists, arms, shoulders, the neck and back is considerable. Inexperienced riders tend to brake too hard and lose control as a result.</p>	<p>Racing bikes are designed for fast rides on roads and paths with a good, undamaged road surface.</p> <p>Racing bikes are sports bikes and not a means of transport. Racing bikes are characterised by their lightweight structure and a design which is stripped to the minimum parts required for riding.</p> <p>The frame geometry and the layout of the operating elements are designed to allow the bike to be ridden at high speeds. Learning how to ride slowly, apply the brakes and get on and off the bike safely takes practice due to the frame design.</p> <p>The sitting position is athletic. The physical strain on hands, wrists, arms, shoulders, the neck and back is considerable. The sitting position requires a high level of physical fitness.</p>	<p>Cargo bikes are suitable for transporting loads on public roads on a daily basis.</p> <p>The transportation of loads requires skill and physical fitness in order to balance the additional weight. The very varied loading conditions and weight distributions require special practice and skill when braking and riding in bends.</p> <p>A longer period is required to adaptation to the length, width and turning circle. You need to be cautious when riding a cargo bike. You must pay attention to traffic on public roads and the condition of the route.</p>	<p>Folding bicycles are suitable for riding on public roads.</p> <p>Folding bikes can be folded together and thus save space when they are transported, e.g. in cars or on local transport.</p> <p>The folding function of the folding bicycle makes it necessary to use smaller wheels and longer brake cables and Bowden cables. Therefore, in case of an increased load, a reduction in riding stability and braking power, diminished comfort and reduced durability are to be expected.</p>

Table 6: Proper use for each pedelec type

### 3.1.1 Improper use

Failure to adhere to the proper use poses a risk of personal injury and material damage. It is prohibited to use the pedelec in the following ways:

- when the electrical drive system has been manipulated
- riding with a damaged or incomplete pedelec
- riding over steps
- riding through deep water
- charging with an incorrect charger
- lending the pedelec to untrained riders
- carrying other people
- riding with excessive baggage
- riding with no hands
- riding on ice and snow
- improper servicing
- improper repair
- tough areas of use, such as professional competitions
- stunt riding or acrobatics.

City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
					
City and trekking bicycles are not sports bicycles. If used for sports, the rider can expect reduced riding stability and diminished comfort.	Cycles for children and young adults are not toys.	Mountain bikes must be retrofitted with lighting, a bell and other fittings as specified by national laws and regulations before they are used on public roads.	Racing bikes must be retrofitted with lights, a bell and other fittings as specified by national laws and regulations before they are used on public roads.	Cargo bikes are not a touring or sports bicycle.	A folding bicycle is not a touring or sports bicycle.

Table 7: Information on improper use

### 3.1.2 Permitted total weight (PTW)

The pedelec may only be loaded to its maximum permitted total weight (PTW).

The maximum permitted total weight is

- the weight of the fully assembled pedelec
- plus body weight
- plus baggage

Type no.	Model	PTW [kg]
22-R-0001	Nos FS 2.1	125

**Table 8: Type number, model and PTW**

### 3.1.3 Environmental requirements

You can be ride the pedelec within a temperature range between -10 °C and +50 °C. The electric drive system is limited in its performance outside this temperature range.

<b>Operating temperature</b>	-10...+50 °C
------------------------------	--------------

During winter use, especially at temperatures below 0 °C, we recommend that you don't insert a battery charged and stored at room temperature into the pedelec until just before setting off. We recommend using thermal protection sleeves when riding longer distances in the cold.

Temperatures under -10 °C and over +60 °C must be avoided.

You must also keep within the following temperature ranges:

<b>Transportation temperature</b>	-20...+60 °C
<b>Storage temperature</b>	-20...+60 °C
<b>Work environment temperature</b>	+15...+25 °C
<b>Charging temperature</b>	0...+40 °C

The nameplate contains symbols for the pedelec's area of use.

- Check what tracks and roads you may ride on before setting off for the first time.











Area of use	City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
						
 <b>1</b>	Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.		Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.
 <b>2</b>	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.		
 <b>3</b>		Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 61 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 61 cm.			
 <b>4</b>			Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, limited downhill use and jumps up to 122 cm.			

Table 9: Area of use

The pedelec is unsuitable for the following areas of use:











Area of use	City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
 <b>1</b>	 Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	 Never drive off-road or perform jumps.		 Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	 Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	 Never drive off-road or perform jumps.
 <b>2</b>	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.		
 <b>3</b>		Never ride downhill or perform jumps over 61 cm.	Never ride downhill or perform jumps over 61 cm.			
 <b>4</b>			Never traverse extremely difficult off-road terrain or perform jumps over 122 cm.			

Table 10: Unsuitable terrain



### 3.2 Nameplate

The nameplate is situated on the frame. Use of the hub gear is described in [Figure 2](#). The nameplate contains thirteen pieces of information.

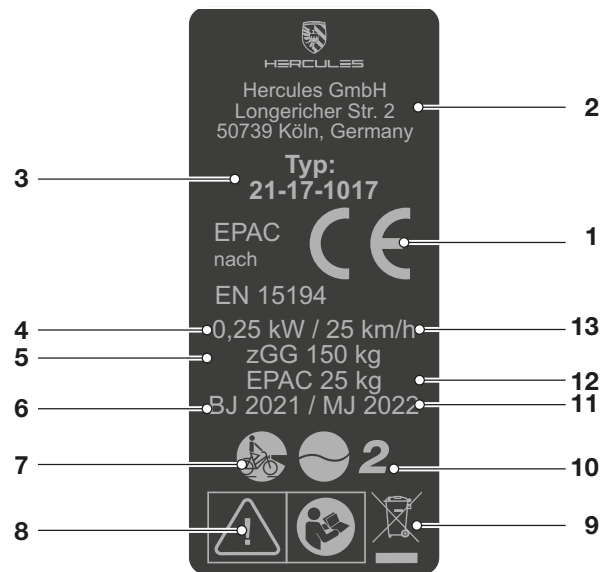


Figure 1: Nameplate, example

No.	Designation	Description	More information
1	CE marking	The manufacturer uses the CE marking to declare that the pedelec complies with applicable requirements.	
2	Manufacturer's contact details	You can contact the manufacturer at the address indicated.	<a href="#">Section 1.1</a>
3	Type number	All pedelec models have an eight-digit type number, which is used to specify the design model year, the type of pedelec and the version.	<a href="#">Section 1.5</a>
4	Maximum continuous power	The maximum continuous power is the greatest possible power for the electric motor output shaft over 30 minutes.	
5	Maximum permitted total weight	The maximum permitted total weight is the weight of the fully assembled pedelec with the rider plus baggage.	
6	Year of manufacture	The year of manufacture is the year in which the pedelec was manufactured. The production period is between June 2021 and June 2022.	
7	Pedelec type	Each pedelec is assigned a pedelec type, which determines its proper use, function and area of use.	<a href="#">Section 3.2</a>
8	Safety markings	Safety markings warn of hazards.	<a href="#">Section 2.6</a>
9	Disposal instructions	These instructions must be followed when disposing of the pedelec.	<a href="#">Section 10</a>
10	Area of use	The pedelec may only be ridden in authorised locations.	<a href="#">Section 3.6</a>
11	Model year	The model year refers to the first production year that the series-manufactured pedelec was produced in the version concerned. The year of manufacture is different to the model year in some cases.	
12	Weight of the ready-to-ride pedelec	The weight of the ready-to-ride pedelec is specified as a weight of 25 kg or above and refers to its weight at the time of purchase. Extra accessories need to be added to the weight.	<a href="#">Section 4.1</a>
13	Shut-off speed	The speed that the pedelec reaches at the moment when the current has dropped to zero or to the no-load current value.	

Table 11: Explanation of information on the nameplate

### 3.3 Components

#### 3.3.1 Overview



Figure 2: Pedelec viewed from the right

1	Front wheel	12	Rear wheel
2	Front wheel hub	13	Gear shift and rear wheel hub
3	Fork	14	Rear wheel brake
4	Steering headset	15	Chain
5	Handlebars	16	Frame number
6	Stem	17	Motor under motor cover
7	Frame	18	Pedal
8	Rear frame damper	19	Battery and type number
9	Seat post	20	Front wheel brake
10	Saddle		
11	Reflector		

### 3.3.2 Chassis

The chassis comprises two components:

- Frame and
- steering system.

#### 3.3.2.1 Frame

The frame absorbs all forces which act on the pedelec from body weight, pedalling and the ground. The frame also acts as a carrier for most components.

The frame geometry determines the pedelec's ride performance.

#### 3.3.2.2 Steering system

The steering system components are:

- Steering headset
- Stem
- Handlebars
- Fork.

#### 3.3.2.3 Steering headset

The steering headset (also known as a bike headset or simply a headset) is the fork bearing system in the frame. A distinction is made between two different types:

- Conventional steering headsets for fork steerers with thread and
- Steering headsets for threadless fork steerers, what are known as headsets.

#### 3.3.2.4 Stem

The stem is the connecting component between the handlebars and the fork steerer tube. The stem is used to adjust the handlebars to the rider. The stem is used to adjust the handlebar height and the gap between the handlebars and saddle (see Section 6.5.6).

#### Quickly adjustable stems

Quickly adjustable stems are an extension to the fork steerer. You can change the height and angle of quickly adjustable stems without any tools. Up to 3 settings can be adjusted, depending on the model:

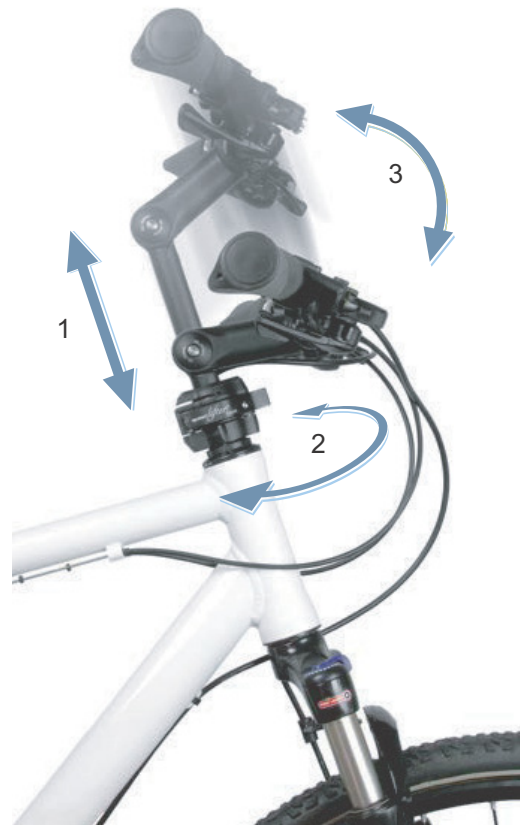


Figure 3: Example – BY.SCHULZ Speedlifter Twist Pro SDS

- 1 Height adjustment
- 2 Twist function
- 3 Stem angle adjustment.

Adjusting the height and stem angle increase ride comfort as different sitting positions can be adopted on longer rides. The twist function saves space when parking.

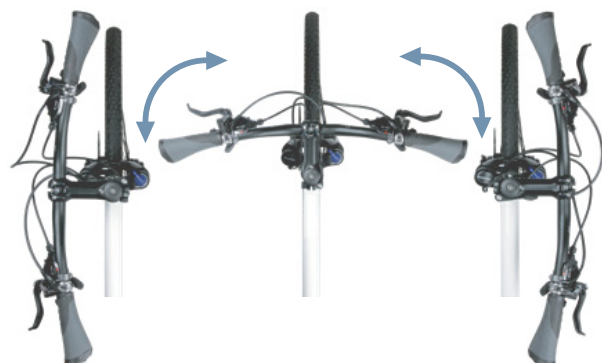


Figure 4: Twist function, using BY.SCHULZ as an example

### 3.3.2.5 Handlebars

The pedelec is steered using the handlebars. The handlebars are used to support the upper body and is the mount for most controls and displays (see Section 3.4.1).

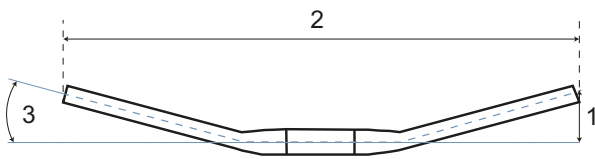


Figure 5: Handlebar dimensions

The main structural dimensions of handlebars are:

- 1 Rise (height)
- 2 Width
- 3 Backsweep

### 3.3.2.6 Fork

The stem and handlebars are attached to the top end of the fork steerer. The axle is fastened to the fork ends. The wheel is fastened to the axle.

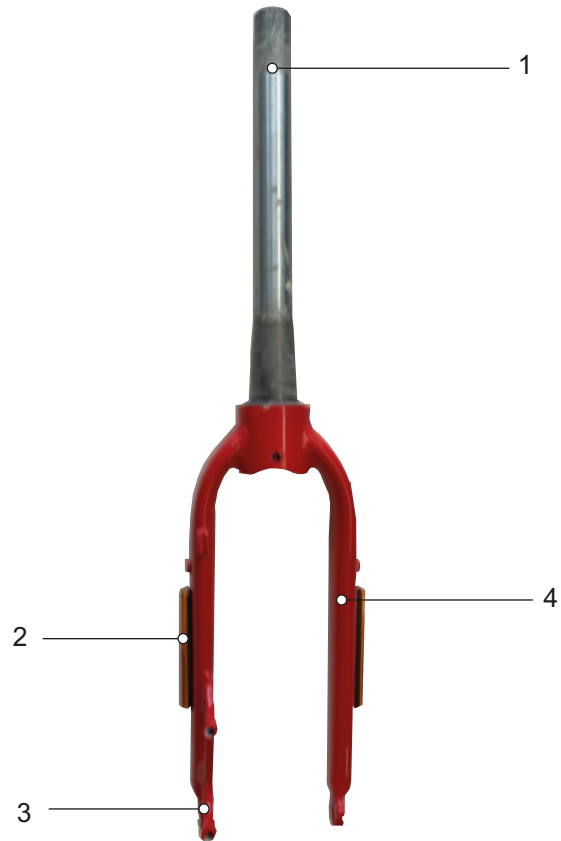


Figure 6: Overview of fork

- 1 Fork steerer
- 2 Side reflectors (optional)
- 3 Fork end
- 4 Fork leg

### 3.3.3 Suspension

#### 3.3.3.1 Suspension fork

A fork deflects when a steel spring, air suspension, or both suspension types act on it.

Unlike rigid forks, suspension forks improve contact with the ground and thus enhance comfort using two functions: suspension and damping. The suspension in a pedelec prevents an impact, such as one caused by a stone lying in the pedelec's path, from being channelled directly into the body via the fork. The impact is absorbed by the suspension system instead. This causes the suspension fork to compress.



Figure 7: Without suspension (1) and with suspension (2)

After compressing, the suspension fork returns to its original position. If there is a damper, it decelerates movement, preventing the suspension system from springing back in an uncontrolled manner and stopping the fork from vibrating up and down. Dampers which dampen compressive deflection movements, i.e. a compression load, are called compression dampers or compression dashpots.

Dampers which dampen rebound deflection movements, i.e. a rebound load, are called rebound dampers or dashpots.

The compression can be disabled in any suspension fork. A suspension fork will then behave like a rigid fork.

The stem and handlebars are fastened to the fork steerer. The wheel is fastened to the axle.

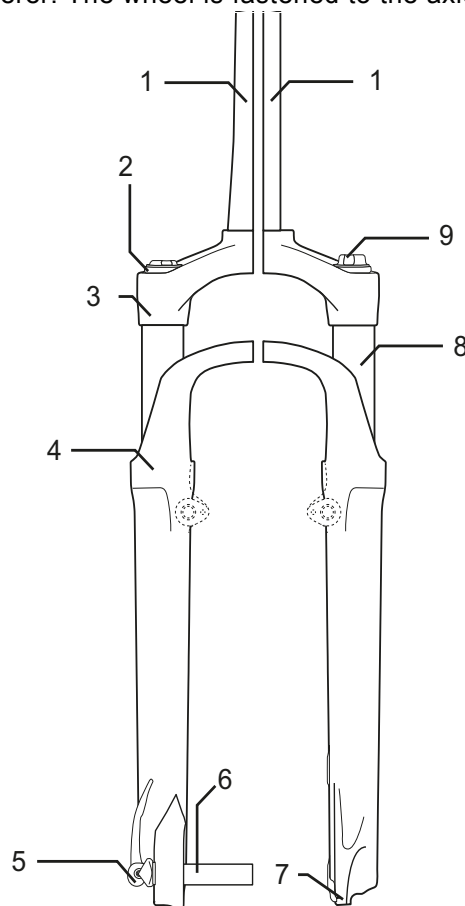


Figure 8: Overview of suspension fork, using Suntour as an example

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1 | Fork steerer        |
| 2 | Sag setting wheel   |
| 3 | Crown               |
| 4 | Dust seal           |
| 5 | Q-Loc               |
| 6 | Axle                |
| 7 | Fork end            |
| 8 | Stanchion           |
| 9 | Compression setting |

### Negative deflection (sag)

The sag is the percentage of total spring deflection that is compressed by the rider's body weight, including equipment (such as a backpack), their seating position and frame geometry. Sag is not caused by riding.

The pedelec rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The wheel stays in contact with the ground when passing over bumps (blue line). The fork head, handlebars and body roughly follow the terrain (green line) when riding over bumps. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled.



Figure 9: Optimum fork ride performance

When optimally adjusted, the fork counteracts deflection, stays higher in its deflection range and

helps the rider to maintain speed while riding on hilly parts of terrain.



Figure 10: Optimum fork ride performance on hilly terrain

When optimally adjusted, the fork deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The fork responds quickly to the bump. The headset and handlebars rise slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).



Figure 11: Optimum fork ride performance over bumps

## Rebound damping

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Rebound damping defines the speed at which the suspension rebounds after being loaded.

Rebound damping controls the suspension fork extension and rebound speed, which, in turn, has an impact on traction and control.

Rebound damping can be adjusted to body weight, spring stiffness, deflection, the terrain and the rider's preferences.

If the air pressure or spring stiffness increases, the extension and rebound speeds also increase.

Rebound damping needs to be increased to achieve an optimal setting if the air pressure or spring stiffness are increased.

The damper rebounds at a controlled speed if the fork is optimally adjusted. The wheel stays in contact with the ground when passing over bumps (blue line).

The fork head, handlebars and body follow terrain (green line) when riding over bumps. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled.



Figure 12: Optimum fork riding performance

## Suspension fork compression adjustment

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The compression adjuster allows the rider to make quick adjustments to the fork's suspension behaviour to adapt to the changes in terrain. It is intended for adjustments made during the ride.

The compression adjuster controls the compression lifting speed or the rate at which the fork deflects slow impacts. The compression adjuster affects the absorption of bumps and its efficiency when weight shifts or during transitions,

cornering and uniform impacts caused by bumps, and when braking. When optimally adjusted, the fork counteracts deflection, stays higher in its deflection range and helps to maintain speed while riding on hilly parts of terrain. The fork deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits a bump and absorbs the bump. Traction is retained (blue line).



Figure 13: Optimum performance on hilly terrain

### Steel suspension fork structure

The stem and the handlebars are fastened to the fork steerer. The wheel is fastened to the axle.

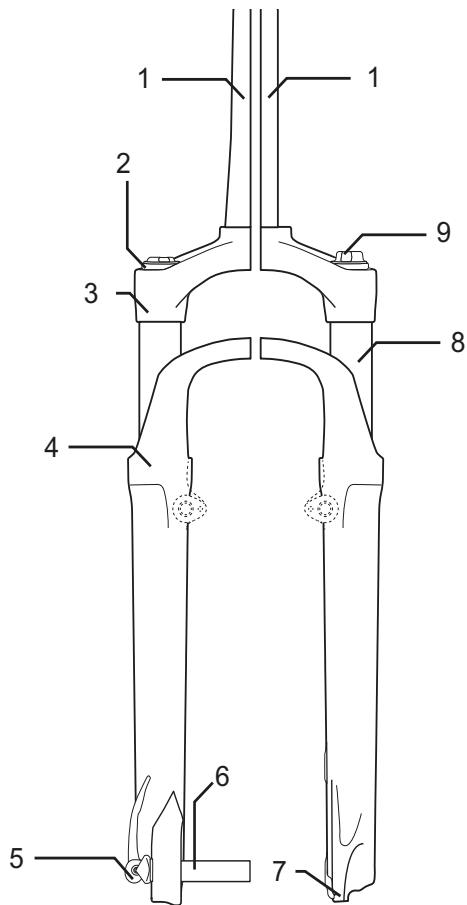


Figure 14: Suntour steel suspension fork as an example

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 | Fork steerer       |
| 2 | Sag setting wheel  |
| 3 | Crown              |
| 4 | Dust seal          |
| 5 | Q-Loc              |
| 6 | Axle               |
| 7 | Fork end           |
| 8 | Stanchion          |
| 9 | Compression damper |

### Air suspension fork structure

Depending on the model, the air suspension fork has either

- an air suspension assembly group (orange) and/or
- a compression damper assembly (blue) and/or
- a rebound damper assembly group (red)

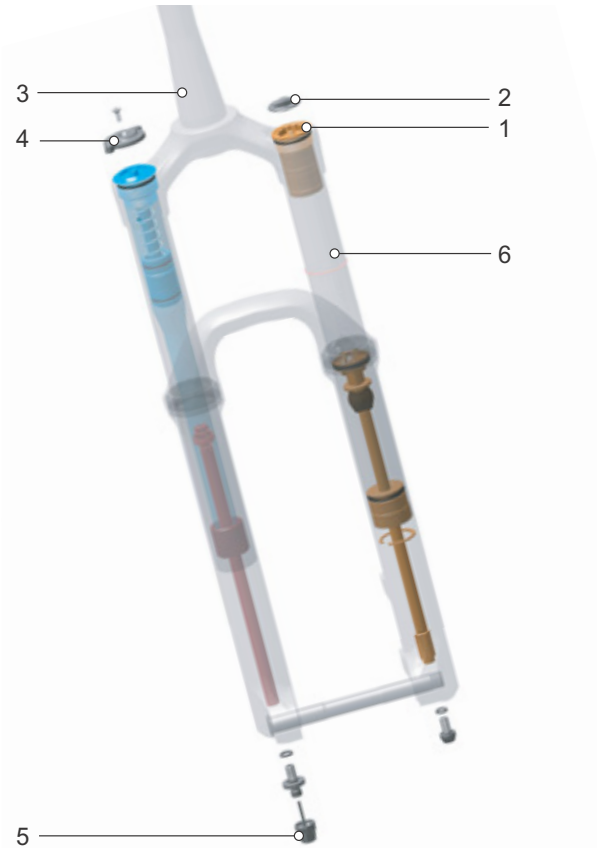


Figure 15: Internal structure of air suspension fork

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 | Air valve         |
| 2 | Air valve cap     |
| 3 | Fork steerer      |
| 4 | Sag setting wheel |
| 5 | Rebound adjuster  |
| 6 | Stanchion         |



### 3.3.3.2 Rear frame damper

A rear frame damper is primarily fitted to mountain bikes and helps to protect the pedelec and rider against impacts and vibrations caused by uneven ground. A rear frame damper deflects when a steel spring, air suspension, or both suspension types act on it.

#### Negative deflection (sag)

The sag is the percentage of total spring deflection that is compressed by the rider's body weight, including equipment (such as a backpack), their seating position and frame geometry. Sag is not caused by riding.

The rear frame damper rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The rear wheel does not bounce off rough surfaces or the ground; it stays in contact with the ground instead (blue line).

The saddle is raised slightly if the bump is compensated and gently sinks downwards when the suspension deflects as soon as the wheel touches the ground after the bump. The rear frame damper rebounds in a controlled way, so that the rider remains sitting in a horizontal position when the next bump is absorbed. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled. The rider is not thrown upwards or forwards (green line).



Figure 16: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection, stays higher in its

deflection range and helps to maintain speed when riding on hilly parts of terrain.



Figure 17: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance on hilly terrain

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The saddle rises slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).



Figure 18: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance over bumps

### Rebound damping for rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The rear frame damper rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The rear wheel does not bounce off rough surfaces or the ground; it stays in contact with the ground instead (blue line). The saddle is raised slightly if the bump is compensated and gently sinks downwards when the suspension deflects as soon as the wheel touches the ground after the bump. The rear frame damper rebounds in a controlled way, so that the rider remains sitting in a horizontal

position when the next bump is absorbed. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled. The rider is not thrown upwards or forwards (green line). The rebound adjuster setting depends on the air pressure setting. A higher sag requires lower rebound damping.

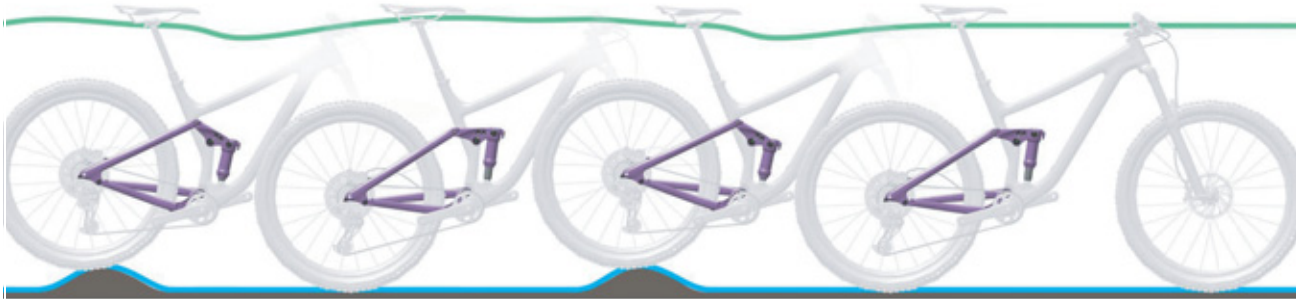


Figure 19: Optimum rear frame damper riding performance

### Rear frame damper compression adjuster

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The compression adjuster controls the compression lifting speed or the rate at which the rear frame damper deflects in response to slow impacts. The compression adjuster affects the absorption of bumps and its efficiency when weight shifts or during transitions, cornering and uniform impacts caused by bumps, and when braking.

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection, stays higher in its deflection range and helps to maintain speed when riding on hilly parts of terrain.

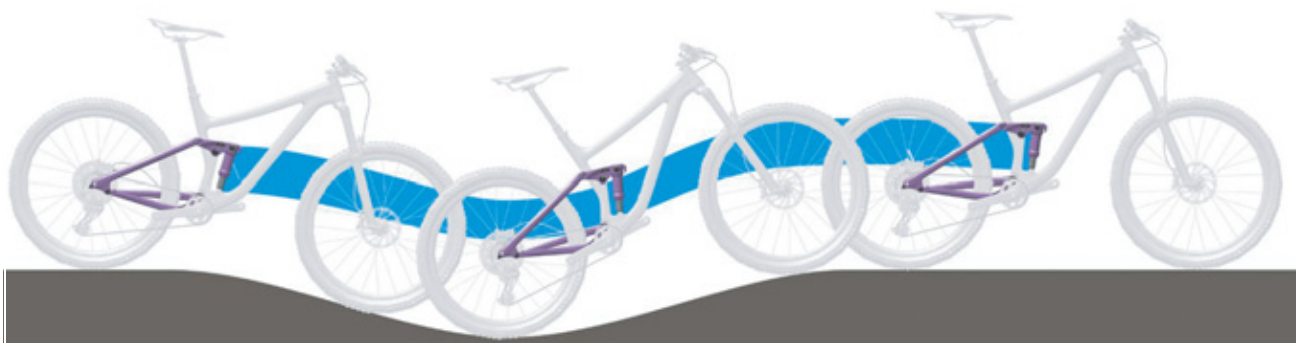


Figure 20: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance on hilly terrain

### 3.3.3.3 RockShox rear frame damper

The rear frame damper features air suspension, a compression damper and a rebound damper.



Figure 21: Monarch RL as an example

- 1 Threshold lever
- 2 Rebound damper adjuster
- 3 Air valve
- 4 O-ring
- 5 Scale

### 3.3.4 Wheel

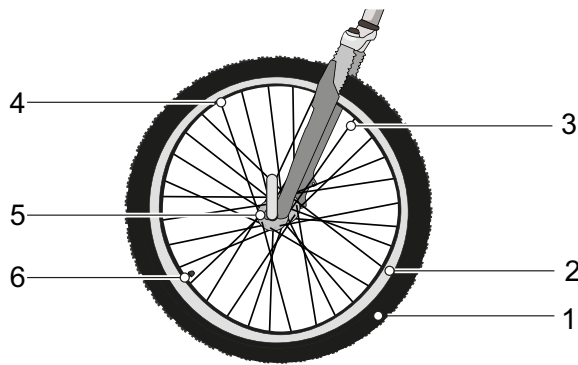


Figure 22: Visible wheel components

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 1 | Tyres         |
| 2 | Rim           |
| 3 | Spoke         |
| 4 | Spoke nipples |
| 5 | Hub           |
| 6 | Valve         |

The wheel comprises the *wheel* itself, an inner tube with a valve and a tyre.

#### 3.3.4.1 Tyres

The tyre forms the outer section of the wheel. Tyres differ in their tread, depending on their intended use.

#### Tread

The tread has little influence on riding characteristics on a smooth road. In this case, the grip between the road and tyre is mainly due to the rolling friction between the rubber and the road surface.

Unlike cars, a pedelec will not aquaplane. The tread contact is much smaller and the contact pressure much higher. Theoretically, aquaplaning will not occur until speeds of 200 km/h are reached.

However, the tread is highly important on terrain. In this case, the tread creates an interlock with the ground. This is the only way possible to transmit the driving, braking and steering forces. The tread can also help improve control on dirty road surfaces.

If a tyre with a deep tread is used on asphalt, this may make an unpleasant noise when the brakes are used. In such a case, the specialist dealer needs to replace the tyre with a new one with a shallow tread.



Figure 23: Example: Information on tyres

#### Tyre pressure

The permitted pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre. It is indicated in psi or bars.

The tyre is only able to support the pedelec if there is adequate tyre pressure. The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the rider and then checked on a regular basis.

#### Tyre size

The tyre size pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre.

#### 3.3.4.2 Rim

The rim is the metal profile on a wheel which holds the tyre, tube and rim band together. The rim is joined to the hub with spokes.

In rim brakes, the outer surface of the rim is used to brake.

#### 3.3.4.3 Valve

Each wheel has a valve. Air is pumped into the tyre via the valve. There is a valve cap on each valve. The screw-on valve cap keeps out dust and dirt.

The pedelec has either:

- a conventional valve
- a Presta valve or
- a Schrader valve.

### Dunlop valve

The Dunlop valve, also known as a conventional valve, is the valve in most widespread use. The valve insert can be replaced easily and air can be let out very quickly.



Figure 24: Dunlop valve

### Presta valve

The Presta valve, also known as the French valve (FV) or Sclaverand valve, is the narrowest variant of all valves. The Presta valve requires a smaller hole in the rim, which is why it is especially suitable for the narrow rims on racing bikes. It is about 4 to 5 g lighter than a Dunlop or Schrader valve.



Figure 25: Presta valve

### Schrader valve

The Schrader valve can be pumped at filling stations. Older and easy bicycle pumps are unsuitable for filling tyres via a Schrader valve.



Figure 26: Schrader valve

#### 3.3.4.4 Spoke

A spoke is a rod that connects the hub to the rim. The bent end of the spoke which is hooked into the hub is called the spoke head. A thread between 10 mm and 15 mm is attached to the other end of the spoke.

#### 3.3.4.5 Spoke nipples

Spoke nipples are screw elements with an internal thread which fits onto the spoke thread. Fitted spokes are tensioned by tightening the spoke nipples. This straightens the wheel uniformly.

#### 3.3.4.6 Hub

The hub is located in the centre of the wheel. The hub is connected to the rim and tyre with the spokes. An axle runs through the hub, connecting the hub with the fork at the front and with the frame at the rear.

The hub's main task is to transfer the pedelec's force of weight to the tyres. Special hubs on the rear wheel perform additional functions. There is a distinction between five types of hub:

- Hubs without additional features
- Brake hub, see Back-pedal brake
- Gear hub, also known as a hub gear
- Generator hub, see Hub dynamo
- Motor hub.

### 3.3.5 Braking system

A pedelec's brake system is primarily operated using the brake lever on the handlebars.

- If the left brake handle is pulled, the brake on the front wheel is applied.
- If the right brake handle is pulled, the brake on the rear wheel is applied.

The brakes are used as an emergency stop system and bring the bicycle to a halt quickly and safely in the event of an emergency.

The brake is applied using the brake lever either

- with the brake lever and shift cable (mechanical brake) or
- with the brake lever and hydraulic brake cable (hydraulic brake).

#### 3.3.5.1 Mechanical brake

The brake lever is connected with the brake via a wire inside the shift cable (also known as a Bowden cable).



Figure 27: Bowden cable structure

#### 3.3.5.2 Hydraulic brake

The brake fluid is in a closed hose system. If the brake lever is pulled, the brake fluid transfers pressure to the brake on the wheel.

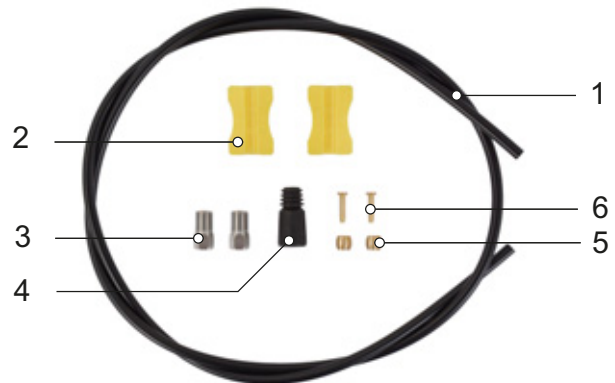


Figure 28: Components in a brake cable

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | Brake cable |
| 2 | Cable clip  |
| 3 | Union nut   |
| 4 | Cover cap   |
| 5 | Knob        |
| 6 | Insert pin  |

### 3.3.5.3 Disc brake

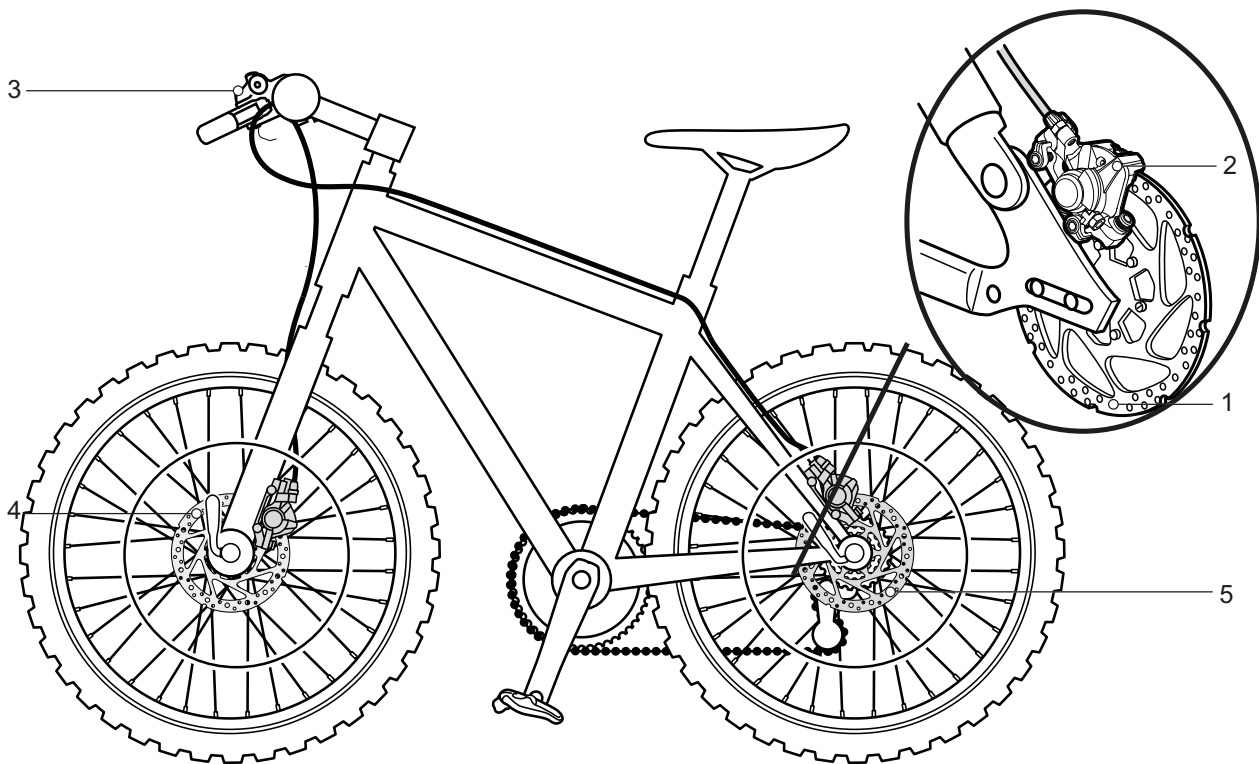


Figure 29: Brake system with disc brake – example

- 1 Brake disc
- 2 Brake calliper with brake linings
- 3 Handlebars with brake lever
- 4 Front wheel brake disc
- 5 Rear wheel brake disc

On a pedelec with a disc brake, the brake disc is screwed permanently to the wheel *hub*.

You increase brake pressure by pulling the *brake lever*. The brake fluid is used to transfer pressure through the brake cables to the cylinders in the brake calliper. The braking force is boosted by a speed reduction and applied to the brake linings. These apply the brake disc mechanically. If the *brake lever* is pushed, the brake linings are pressed against the brake disc and the wheel movement is decelerated until it comes to a stop.



### 3.3.6 Seat post

Seat posts are not designed to fasten the saddle but also to adjust exactly to the optimum sitting position. The seat post can:

- adjust the seat height in the seat tube
- adjust the saddle horizontally with a clamping mechanism and
- adjust the saddle angle by swivelling the entire saddle clamping mechanism.

Retractable seat posts feature a remote control on the handlebars, which can be used to lower the seat post – at a traffic light, for example – and raise it again.

#### 3.3.6.1 Patent seat post



Figure 30: Example of ergotec patent seat post with either one or two seat clamping screws

Patent seat posts have a rigid link between the saddle and the post. Patent seat posts which are angled more markedly towards the rear are called offset seat posts. Offset seat posts provide a greater distance between the saddle and the handlebars.

In patent saddle posts, the saddle is attached to the head with one or two saddle clamping screws. It is recommended to lubricate the thread in these screws to ensure sufficient tension when tightening the screw.

Patent saddle posts are fastened into the seat tube with either a quick release or a screwable clamp.

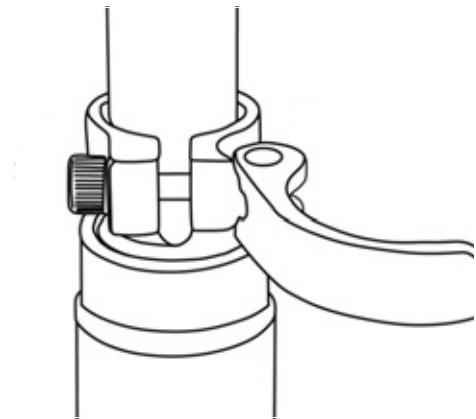


Figure 31: Example of a quick release

#### 3.3.6.2 Suspension seat post

Spring-loaded seat posts can reduce shock after one-time hard impacts, thus improving ride comfort significantly. However, suspension seat posts are not able to compensate for bumps in the road.

If the seat post is the only suspension element, the entire vehicle is a non-suspended mass. This has an unfavourable effect on loaded touring bikes or pedelecs with child trailers.

Suspension seat posts feature small, heavy-duty slide bearings, guides and articulated joints. If they are not lubricated on a regular basis, the sensitive response behaviour diminishes considerably, causing excessive wear.

The pre-tensioning in non-damped suspension seat posts must be adjusted in such a way that the suspension seat post does not deflect with just body weight. This prevents the suspension seat post from deflecting and bobbing intermittently at higher pedalling frequencies or if the rider pedals irregularly.

The spring stiffness can be set lower with damped suspension seat posts, thus making use of the negative deflection.

### 3.3.7 Mechanical drive system

The pedelec is driven by muscle power, just like a bicycle.

The force which is applied by pedalling in the direction of travel drives the front chain wheel. The chain or belt transmits the force onto the rear chain wheel and then onto the rear wheel.

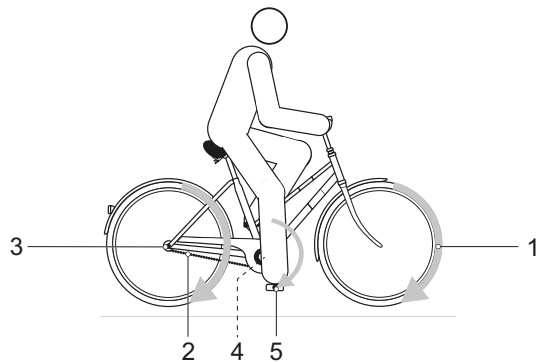


Figure 32: Diagram of mechanical drive system

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Direction of travel              |
| 2 | Chain or belt                    |
| 3 | Rear chain wheel or belt pulley  |
| 4 | Front chain wheel or belt pulley |
| 5 | Pedal                            |

The pedelec is equipped with either a chain or belt drive.

#### 3.3.7.1 Chain drive layout



Figure 33: Chain drive with derailleur gears

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 | Rear derailleur |
| 2 | Chain           |

A chain drive is compatible with

- Back-pedal brake,
- Hub gear or
- Derailleur gears

#### 3.3.7.2 Belt drive layout



Figure 34: Belt drive

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 | Front belt pulley |
| 2 | Rear belt pulley  |
| 3 | Belt              |

A belt drive is compatible with

- Back-pedal brake and
- Hub gear

A belt drive is not compatible with derailleur gears.

### 3.3.8 Electric drive system

The pedelec has an electric drive system in addition to a mechanical one.

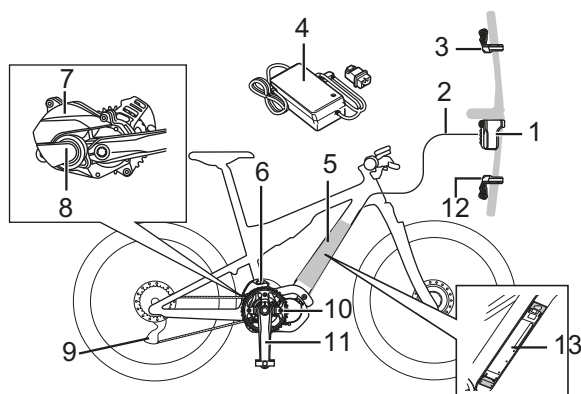


Figure 35: Diagram of electric drive system

- |    |                       |
|----|-----------------------|
| 1  | On-board computer     |
| 2  | Connecting cable      |
| 3  | Assistance lever      |
| 4  | Charger               |
| 5  | Rechargeable battery  |
| 6  | Chain tensioner       |
| 7  | Drive unit cover      |
| 8  | Drive unit            |
| 9  | Rear derailleur (DI2) |
| 10 | Front chainring       |
| 11 | Crank                 |
| 12 | Shifter               |
| 13 | Rechargeable battery  |

The electric drive system has three wireless communication options:

#### Digital wireless system with 2.4 GHz

The digital wireless technology with a frequency of 2.4 GHz is identical to WLAN.

#### ANT connection

All information shown on the on-board computer can be sent to external devices that support ANT connections.

#### Bluetooth® LE connection

All information shown on the on-board computer can be sent to external devices which support Bluetooth® LE connections.

E-TUBE PROJECT for smartphones and/or tablets can be used if a Bluetooth® LE connection can be established with a smartphone and/or tablet.

E-TUBE RIDE can be used to check journey data on a smartphone connected via Bluetooth® LE.

#### 3.3.8.1 Motor

As soon as the muscle power required for pedalling passes a certain level, the motor is activated gently and assists the pedalling motion. The motor force is determined by the set level of assistance.

The pedelec does not have a separate emergency stop or emergency shut-off button.

The motor switches off automatically as soon as the rider stops pedalling, the temperature is outside the permitted range, there is an overload or the shut-off speed of 25 km/h has been reached.

A push assist system can be activated. The speed can be a maximum of 6 km/h in this case.

#### 3.3.8.2 Battery

The lithium ion battery has an internal electronic protection circuit, which is specifically designed for the charger and the pedelec. The battery temperature is monitored at all times. The battery is protected against deep discharge, overcharging, overheating and short circuit. In the event of a hazard, a protective circuit switches the battery off automatically. The battery also switches to sleep mode for self-protection when not used for a longer period.

If the remaining battery capacity is low, the following systems are gradually switched off in the following order:

1. Pedal assistance (assistance mode automatically switches to [ECO], then assistance switches off. Assistance switches to [ECO] earlier if a battery-powered light is connected)
2. Gear shift
3. Light

### 3.3.8.3 Rechargeable battery

The lithium ion battery has an interior electronic protection circuit, which is specifically designed for the charger and the pedelec. The battery temperature is monitored at all times. The battery is protected against deep discharge, overcharging, overheating and short circuit. In the event of a hazard, a protective circuit switches the battery off automatically. The battery also switches to sleep mode for self-protection when not used for a longer period. If the remaining battery capacity is low, the following systems are gradually switched off in the following order:

1. Pedal assistance (level of assistance) automatically switches to [ECO], then assistance switches off. Assistance switches to [ECO] earlier if a battery-powered light is connected)
2. Gear shift
3. Light

The battery's service life can be extended if the battery is well maintained and stored at the correct temperature. The charging capacity will decrease with age, even if the battery is maintained properly. If the operating time is severely shortened after charging, this is a sign that battery has reached the end of its useful life.

The pedelec has a BMZ V10 rechargeable battery:

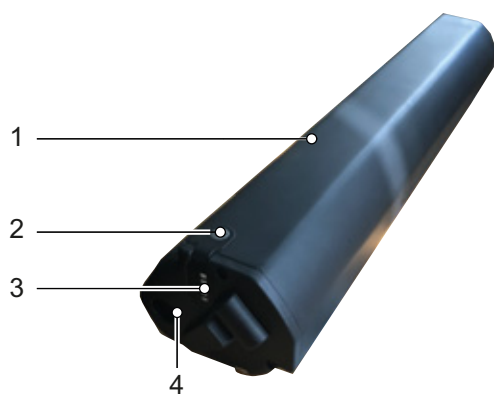


Figure 36: Overview of BMZ V10 battery

- 1 Battery housing
- 2 On-Off button (battery)
- 3 Charging port
- 4 Battery level indicator LED

### 3.3.9 Riding light

When the riding light is activated, the *headlight* and the rear light are switched on together.

The light is controlled using the light button on the on-board computer and the light switch on the handlebars.

### 3.3.10 Charger

Each pedelec is supplied with a charger. Read the charger operating instructions.

### 3.3.10.1 On-board computer

The SC-EM800 on-board computer controls the drive system with two operating elements, and displays the journey data.

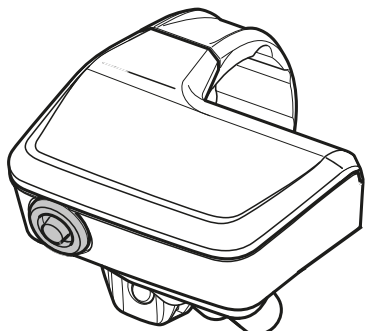


Figure 37: Overview of SC-EM800 on-board computer

### 3.3.10.2 Control panel

The electric drive system is operated using the on-board computer (II) and the left-hand control panel (I). The right-hand control panel (III) switches the gears.

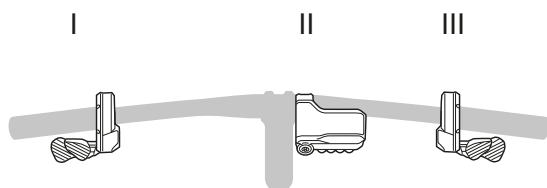


Figure 38: Overview of control panel position

Depending on the model, there can be three different control panels:

- 3-switch control panel
- 2-switch control panel
- MTB control panel.

### 3-switch control panel

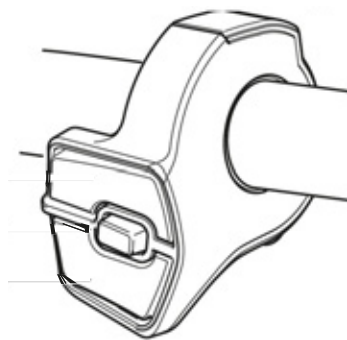


Figure 39: 3-switch control panel

### 2-switch control panel

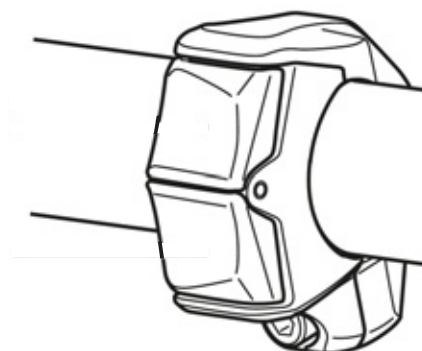


Figure 40: 2-switch control panel

### MTB control panel

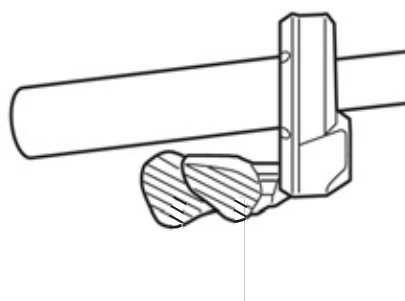


Figure 41: MTB control panel

### 3.4 Description of controls and screens

#### 3.4.1 Handlebars



Figure 42: Detailed view of handlebars with SHIMANO SC-E800 on-board computer, used as example

1	Rear wheel hand brake	5	Air valve
2	Front wheel hand brake	6	Lock out
3	Handle	7	On-board computer
4	Control panel	8	Shifter

### 3.4.2 On-board computer

The *on-board computer* has one button (1) and a display screen (2).

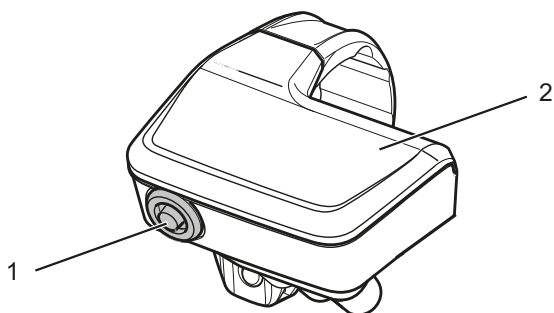


Figure 43: SC-EM800 on-board computer details

	Function
<b>WHEN RIDING</b>	
BUTTON	Switch journey data displayed
<b>WHEN SETTING</b>	
	Change display or confirm setting change

Table 12: Overview of functions

#### 3.4.2.1 Main screen

After starting up, the main display screen appears. The *main display screen* has eight displays:



Figure 44: Overview of main display screen

- 1 Shift mode indicator
- 2 Gear level indicator
- 3 Maintenance indicator
- 4 Bluetooth® indicator
- 5 Battery level indicator
- 6 Journey information indicator
- 7 Current assistance mode indicator
- 8 Assistance indicator System message

#### 1. Shift mode indicator

The rider has the choice between an automatic and manual gear shift. The selected gear shift type is shown on the display screen.

Display	Function
[A]	The electric drive system selects the ideal gear.
[M]	The gears are selected.

Table 13: Symbols of the gear recommendation function

#### 2. Gear level indicator

The indicator is only visible if an electronic gear shift is used. It shows the currently selected gear.

#### 3. Bluetooth indicator

Displayed when an external device is connected via Bluetooth® LE.

#### 4. Maintenance indicator

Indicates that maintenance is required.

- Contact your specialist dealer.

#### 5. Battery level indicator (on-board computer)

The battery level indicator (on-board computer) indicates the battery level as a percentage in a symbol.







Display	Function
	100 - 81%
	80 - 61%
	60 - 41%
	40 - 21%
	20 - 1%
	0%

Table 14: Charge level of the battery

#### 6. Journey information indicator

The displayed journey information can be switched. The current selected journey information is displayed on the display screen. You can use the system settings to select whether the speed is displayed in kilometres per hour [km/h] or miles per hour [mph].

Display	Function
DST	Distance travelled since the last reset
ODO	Display of the total distance travelled (cannot be changed)
RANGE*	Estimated range of the available battery charge
TIME	Trip time
AVG	Average speed
MAX	Maximum achieved speed
CADENCE	Number of crank revolutions per minute
CLOCK	Clock

Table 15: Journey information

#### 7. Current level of assistance indicator

The selected level of assistance differs depending on the pedelec. The higher the selected level of assistance, the more the drive system assists with pedalling.

The following levels of assistance are available:

Display	Details
BOOST	High level of assistance.
TRAIL	Normal assistance
ECO	Low level of assistance
OFF	Assistance off
WALK	Activated push assist

Table 16: Overview of level of assistance

#### 8. Assistance indicator

Shows the level of assistance. The display colors change depending on the current assistance mode.



### 3.4.3 Warnings and errors

The drive system monitors itself continuously and if an error is detected, it is indicated by a system message. The system may switch off automatically depending on the type of error. You will find more information and a table containing all system messages in Section [6.3](#).

The drive system distinguishes between two system messages: warnings and error messages.

#### 3.4.3.1 Warnings

Warnings are displayed between the selected gear and the current speed on the system message screen. There are limitations to the system's operation, depending on the error type. There is a table of system messages and remedial measures in Section [6.3.1](#).

#### 3.4.3.2 Error messages

Error messages are shown on the entire display. There are limitations to the drive systems system's operation, depending on the error type. There is a table of error messages and remedial measures in Section [6.3.2](#).

### 3.4.4 Gear shift

There is either a switch control panel or a shifter on the right side of the handlebars. There can be three different switches, depending on the model:

- 3-switch control panel
- 2-switch control panel or
- MTB control panel.

#### 3-switch control panel

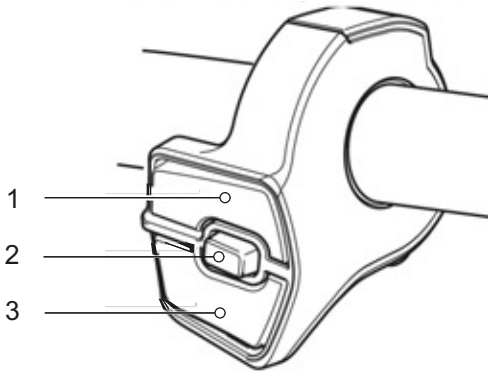


Figure 45: 3-switch control panel

- 1 Switch X
- 2 Switch A
- 3 Switch Y

#### 2-switch control panel

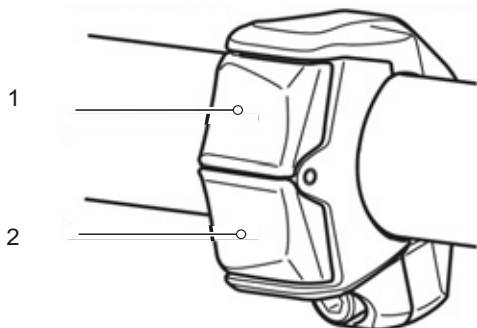


Figure 46: 2-switch control panel

- 1 Switch X
- 2 Switch Y

#### MTB control panel

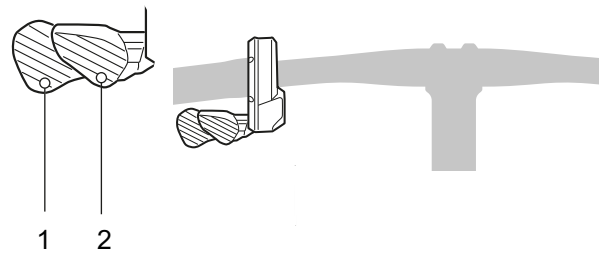


Figure 47: MTB control panel

- 1 Switch Y
- 2 Switch X

#### 3.4.4.1 Control panel functions on right

Switch	Function
X	Change up
Y	Change down
A	Switch between automatic and manual Gear shift

If there is no switch A on the switch control panel, the button on the on-board computer will control these functions.

#### SHIMANO shifter SL-M5100

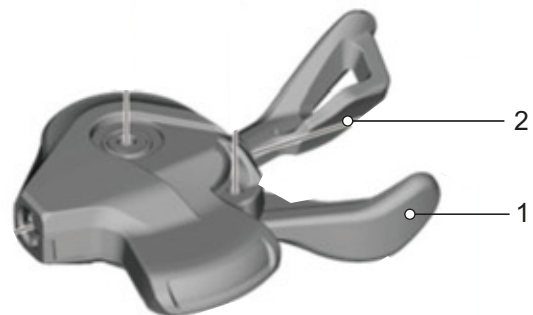


Figure 48: Shifter SL-M5100

- 1 Shifter A
- 2 Shifter B

## SHIMANO shifter SL-M8100

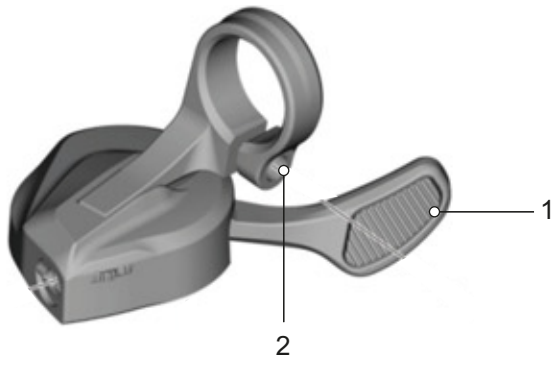


Figure 49: Shifter SL-M8100

1 Shifter

### 3.4.5 Hand brake

There is a hand brake on the left and right of the handlebars.

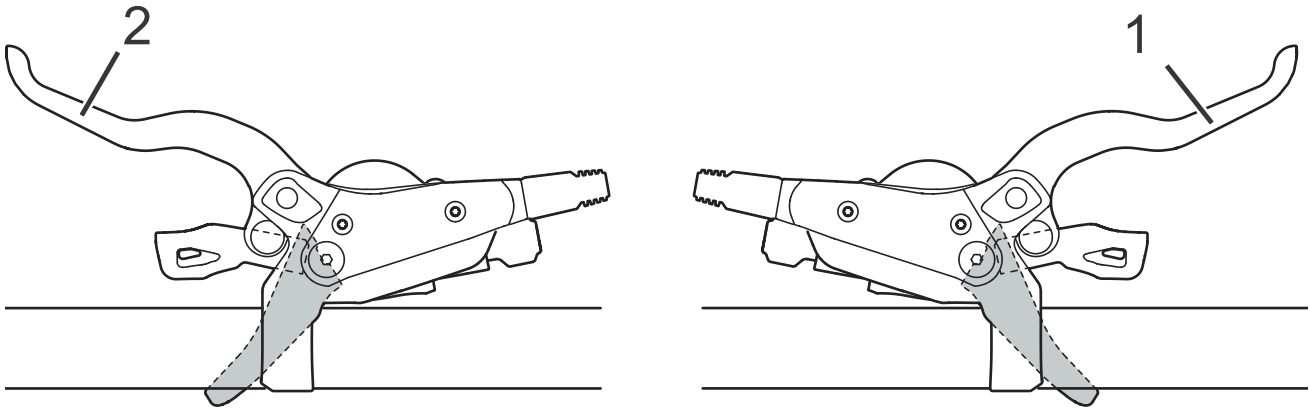


Figure 50: Front wheel (2) and rear (1) brake levers – Shimano brake used as an example

- The left-hand brake controls the front wheel brake.
- The right-hand brake controls the rear wheel brake.

### 3.4.6 Battery level indicator (battery)

The five LEDs on the battery level indicator show the charge level when the battery is switched on. Each LED represents 20% of the charge level.







LED 1,2,3,4,5	Battery level
	100...80%
	79...60%
	59...40%
	39...20%
	19...5%
	4...0%

Figure 51: Battery level indicator when discharging







LED 1,2,3,4,5	Battery level
	0– 19%
	20– 49%
	40– 69%
	60– 79%
	80– 99%
	100%

Figure 52: Battery level indicator when charging

Symbols:



The charge level for the activated battery is also shown on the *display screen*. If the battery level falls below 4%, all the LEDs on the battery level indicator will go out. However, the battery level is still shown on the *display screen*.

System errors and warnings are displayed by various light patterns on the *battery level indicator*. There is a table with all system messages in Section 6.2 System messages.

## 3.5 Technical data

### 3.5.1 Pedelec

Transportation temperature	-20... +60 °C
Storage temperature	-20... +70 °C
Operation temperature	-10... 50 °C
Charging ambient temperature	0 °...40 °C
Power output/system	250 W (0.25 kW)
Shut-off speed	25 km/h

Table 17: Technical data for pedelec without battery

### 3.5.2 SHIMANO EP8 DU-EP800 motor

Maximum continuous power rating	250 W
Max. torque	85 Nm
Nominal voltage	36 V DC
Weight about	2.6 kg

Table 18: Technical data for SHIMANO EP8 DU-EP800 motor

### 3.5.3 SHIMANO SC-EM800 on-board computer

Operating temperature	-5...+40 °C
Storage temperature	-10...+40 °C
Charging temperature	0...+40 °C
Protection class (with USB cover closed)	IPX7 <sup>A)</sup>
Weight about	0.06 kg
<b>USB port</b>	
Max. charging current for USB port	1000 mA <sup>B)</sup>
USB port charge voltage	5 V
USB charging cable	1 270 016 360 <sup>C)</sup>
<b>Bluetooth® low energy®</b>	
Frequency	2402-2480 MHz
Transmitting capacity	< 10 mW
Maximum high-frequency output	+4 dBm
Firmware version	4.0.0 or later
<b>WLAN</b>	
Frequency	2.4 GHz

Table 19: Technical data for SHIMANO SC-EM800

A) With the USB cover closed

B) At an ambient temperature <25 °C

C) Not included in the scope of delivery

### 3.5.4 Emissions

The safety requirements as per Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU have been met. The pedelec and the charger can be used in residential areas without restriction.

A-weighted emission sound pressure level	< 70 dB(A)
Total vibration level for the hands and arms	< 2.5 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Highest effective value of weighted acceleration for the entire body	< 0.5 m/s <sup>2</sup>

Table 20: Emissions

### 3.5.5 Rechargeable battery

#### 3.5.5.1 Simplo TP-500

Nominal capacity	13.4 Ah
Energy	500 Wh
Weight	3.3 kg
Max. charging current, continuous	6 A
Voltage	36 V
Discharging temperature	-10 ... +60
Charging temperature	0 ... +45
Storage temperature	0 ... +25
Protection class	IPX6

#### 3.5.5.2 Simplo TP-630

Nominal capacity	16.8 Ah
Energy	630 Wh
Weight	3.8 kg
Max. charging current, continuous	6 A
Voltage	36 V
Discharging temperature	-10 ... +60
Charging temperature	0 ... +45
Storage temperature	0 ... +25
Protection class	IPX6

### 3.5.6 FIT Fast Charger (36-6/230)

Nominal voltage	
Frequency	
Battery charge voltage	
Charging current (max.)	
Protection class	IP40
Operating temperature	-5 °C - +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 °C - +50 °C
Weight	0.3 kg

### 3.5.7 Tightening torques

Model	Tightening torque	Screw
<b>On-board computer</b>		
<b>SC-E5003</b> Attachment screw	0.8 Nm	3 mm hex bit
<b>Shifter</b>		
<b>SHIMANO DEORE SL-M4100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO DEORE SL-M5100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO DEORE SL-M6100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO DEORE XT SL-M8100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO DEORE XT SL-M8130</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO SLX SL-M7100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>SHIMANO XTR SL-M9100</b> Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>Seat post operating lever</b>		
<b>eightpins</b> Attachment screw	2.5 Nm	4 mm hex bit
<b>Bowden cable fastener</b>	5 Nm	3 mm hex bit
<b>Axle</b>		
<b>Conventional axle nut</b>	35...40 Nm*	
<b>SUNTOUR screw-on axle 12AH2</b> Axle Securing screw	8...10 Nm 5...6 Nm	6 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit
<b>SUNTOUR screw-on axle 15AH2</b> Axle Securing screw	8...10 Nm 5...6 Nm	6 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit
<b>Handlebars</b>		
<b>Clamping screw, conventional</b>	5...7 Nm*	
<b>Seat post</b>		
<b>by.schulz, G1</b> M8 seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	20...24 Nm 3 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
<b>by.schulz, G2</b> M6 seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	12...14 Nm 3 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
<b>eightpins NGS2</b> Seat post axle Slipper clutch Valve cap Postpin axle Rear clamping screw (saddle) M5 attachment screw for outer sleeve	8 Nm 18 Nm 0.5 Nm 8 Nm 8 Nm 0.5 Nm	6 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit

**Table 21: Tightening torques and bits**



<b>eightpins H01</b> Seat post axle Slipper clutch Valve cap Postpin axle Rear clamping screw (saddle) M5 attachment screw for outer sleeve	8 Nm 18 Nm 0.5 Nm 8 Nm 8 Nm 0.5 Nm	6 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit
<b>LIMOTEC LimoDP</b> Seat post clamping screw Saddle clamping screw	6...7 Nm 7...9 Nm	
<b>SUNTOUR suspension seat post</b> Seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	15...18 Nm 3 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
<b>Pedals</b>		
<b>Pedal, conventional</b>	33...35 Nm	15 mm spanner

**Table 21: Tightening torques and bits**

\*if there is no other data on the component

## 4 Transporting and storing

### 4.1 Weight and dimensions for transportation

Weight and dimensions during transportation

Type no.	F frame	Box dim. [cm]	Weight** [kg]	Shipping weight [kg]
21-19-1003	41	#	25	#
	44	#	25	#
	47	#	25	#
	50	#	25	#

**Table 22: Type number, model and pedelec type**

\*\* Vehicle weight without battery

# Not yet available when the instructions were produced

### 4.2 Designated handles, lifting points

The box does not have any handles.

## 4.3 Transportation



### Crash caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery.

### 4.3.1 Using the brake transport securing system

Applicable for pedelec disc brakes only.



### Oil leak if no transport securing device

The brake securing device prevents the brakes from being applied accidentally during transportation or shipment. This could cause irreparable damage to the brake system or an oil leak, which will harm the environment.

- ▶ Never push the brake lever when the wheel has been dismantled.
  - ▶ Always use the transport securing system when transporting or shipping.
- 
- ▶ Insert the **transport securing devices** between the brake linings.
- ⇒ Transport securing device is squeezed between the two linings and prevents undesired sustained braking which can cause brake fluid to leak out.

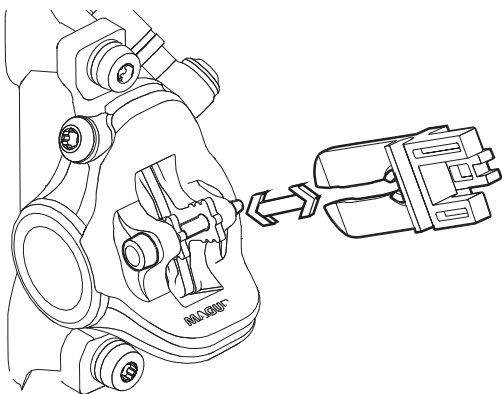


Figure 53: Fastening the transport securing device

### 4.3.2 Transporting the pedelec

Bicycle rack systems which use the handlebars or frame to hold the pedelec in an upside-down position exert inadmissible forces on its components during transportation. This can cause the supporting parts to break.

- ▶ Never use bicycle rack systems which use the pedelec's handlebars or frame to hold it in an upside-down position. The specialist dealer will give a consultation on correct selection and safe use of a rack system.
- ▶ Take into account the weight of the ready-to-use pedelec when transporting it.
- ▶ Protect the electrical components and connections on the pedelec from the weather conditions with suitable protective covers.
- ▶ Transport the battery in a dry, clean position where it is protected from direct sunlight.

### 4.3.3 Shipping a pedelec

- ▶ When shipping the pedelec, we recommend that you have the specialist dealer place it in proper packaging.

### 4.3.4 Transporting the battery

*Batteries* are subject to hazardous goods regulations. Undamaged batteries may be transported by private persons in road traffic.

Commercial transport requires compliance with regulations concerning packaging, labelling and the transportation of hazardous goods. Open contacts must be covered and the battery securely packaged.

### 4.3.5 Shipping the battery

The battery is considered a hazardous good and only trained persons may pack and ship a battery. Contact specialist dealer.

## 4.4 Storing

- ▶ Store pedelec, on-board computer, battery and charger in a clean, dry place where they are protected from sunlight. Do not store outdoors to ensure a long service life.

Optimum pedelec storage temperature	+10... +20 °C
-------------------------------------	---------------

Table 23: Storage temperature for batteries and the pedelec

- ✓ Temperatures under -10 °C or over +40 °C must generally be avoided.
- ✓ Storage at about 10 °C to 20 °C is beneficial to a long battery life.
- ✓ Store pedelec, on-board computer, battery and charger separately.

### 4.4.1 Break in operation

#### Notice

The battery discharges when not in use. This can cause irreparable damage to the battery.

- ▶ The battery must be recharged every 6 months.

The battery may become damaged if it is connected permanently to the charger.

- ▶ Never connect the battery to the charger permanently.

The on-board computer battery discharges when it is not in use. This can cause irreparable damage to it.

- ▶ Recharge the on-board computer battery for at least 1 hour every 3 months.

- ▶ Remove the on-board computer from its mount if the pedelec is not going to be used for up to four weeks. Store the on-board computer away safely in a dry environment at room temperature.
- ▶ If the pedelec is removed from service for longer than four weeks, you need to prepare it for a break in operation.

#### 4.4.1.1 Preparing a break in operation

- ✓ Remove the rechargeable battery from the pedelec.
- ✓ Charge battery to 30%–60%.
- ✓ The pedelec needs to be cleaned with a damp cloth and preserved with wax spray. Never wax the friction surfaces of the brake.
- ✓ Before longer periods without use, it is recommended to have the specialist dealer carry out an inspection and basic cleaning and apply preservative agent.

#### 4.4.1.2 Carrying out a break in operation

- 1 Store the pedelec, battery and charger in a dry, clean environment. We recommend storing them in uninhabited rooms with smoke alarms. Dry locations with an ambient temperature between 10 °C and 20 °C are ideal.
- 2 Recharge the on-board computer battery for at least 1 hour every 3 months.
- 3 Check the battery level after 6 months. If only one LED on the battery level indicator lights up, recharge the battery to between 30% and 60%.



## 5 Assembly

### WARNING

#### Risk of eye injury

Problems may arise if components are set incorrectly. They may cause serious injuries to the face.

- ▶ Always wear safety glasses to protect eyes when assembling pedelecs.

### CAUTION

#### Crash and crushing hazard caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery.

- ✓ Assemble the pedelec in a clean, dry environment.
- ✓ The *work environment* temperature should be between 15 °C and 25 °C.
- ✓ The fitting stand used must be approved for a maximum weight of least 30 kg.

### 5.1 Unpacking

The packaging material consists mainly of cardboard and plastic film.

- ▶ Dispose of the packaging in accordance with the regulatory requirements (see Section 10).
- ⇒ Pedelecs are fully assembled in the factory for test purposes and then dismantled for transportation. The pedelec is 95% to 98% pre-assembled.

### Scope of delivery

<input type="checkbox"/>	1 pre-assembled pedelec
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 front wheel
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 pedals
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 quick releases (optional)
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 charger
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 set of operating instructions on CD.
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 battery (supplied separately from the pedelec)

### 5.2 Required tools

The following tools are required to assemble the pedelec:

	Knife
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm and 15 mm
	Torque wrench Working range 5–40 Nm
	<b>by.Schulz handlebars:</b> TORX® bits: 4 mm, 5 mm and 6 mm <b>If not:</b> Hexagon bits: 4 mm, 5 mm and 6 mm
	Hexagon socket spanner 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Spline nut socket T25
	Cross-recess screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 24: Tools required for assembly



## 5.3 Commissioning

Only trained specialist staff may perform initial commissioning since initial commissioning of the pedelec requires special tools and specialist knowledge.

Experience has shown that a pedelec which has not yet been sold is automatically handed to customers as soon as it appears ready to ride.

- ▶ It makes sense to prepare each pedelec so that it is fully ready for use immediately after being assembled.
- ▶ The assembly report (see Section [11.2](#)) describes all safety-relevant inspections, tests and maintenance tasks.
- ▶ All assembly work must be completed to ensure the pedelec is ready to ride.
- ▶ Complete an assembly report to document quality assurance (see Section [11.1](#)).

### 5.3.1 Checking the battery

The battery must be checked before it is charged for the first time.

- ▶ Press the **On-Off button (battery)**.
- ⇒ If none of the LEDs on the battery level indicator light up, the battery may be damaged.
- ⇒ The battery may be fully charged if at least one, but not all, of the LEDs on the battery level indicator is lit up.



### 5.3.2 Preparing the wheel

There is an arrow on the sides of the tyres with the inscription ROTATION to show the direction of rotation. The inscription says DRIVE on older tyres. The rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation. On road tyres, the direction of rotation is mainly for optical reasons.



Figure 54: Rotation direction arrow

The direction of rotation is much more important on off-road terrain because the tread creates an interlock with the ground. While the rear wheel needs to transmit the drive forces, the front wheel is responsible for transmitting braking and steering forces. Drive and braking forces have different directions of action. This is why some tyres are mounted on the front and rear wheels in opposite directions. On these tyres, there are two rotation direction arrows:

- The FRONT rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation for the front wheel.
- The REAR rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation for the rear wheel.



Figure 55: Rotation direction arrow on MTB tyres

- ▶ The rotation direction arrow must point in the direction of travel when the wheel is placed in the fork.
- ▶ There are also non-directional tyre profiles with no rotation direction arrow.



### 5.3.3 Preparing the LIMOTEC seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Use the seat height formula to calculate the optimum seat post height for the length of rider's leg:  
Seat height ( $SH$ ) = inner leg length ( $I$ )  $\times$  0.9
- 2 Lower the seat post further into the seat tube
- 3 The seat post Bowden cable must be tightened in the frame up to the remote control to the same length as the seat post was lowered.
- 4 Trim the seat post Bowden cable on the handlebars if necessary.





### 5.3.4 Fitting the pedals

The pedals have two different threads to ensure they don't come loose while the rider is pedalling.

- The pedal on the left facing the direction of travel has a left-hand thread and is marked L.
- The pedal on the right facing the direction of travel has a right-hand thread and is marked R.

The mark is either on the top end, the axle or the pedal body.



Figure 56: Example of markings on pedals

- 1 Coat threads in both pedals with waterproof grease.
- 2 Turn the pedal marked L anti-clockwise by hand into the crank arm on the left as seen when facing the direction of travel.



Figure 57: L-pedal in the left-hand crank arm

- 3 Turn the pedal marked R anti-clockwise by hand into the crank arm on the right as seen when facing the direction of travel.



Figure 58: R-pedal in the right-hand crank arm

- 4 Use a 15 mm spanner to fasten the left-hand pedal thread in an anti-clockwise direction and the right-hand pedal in a clockwise direction with a torque between 33 Nm and 35 Nm.



## 5.3.5 Checking the stem and handlebars

### 5.3.5.1 Checking the connections

- 1 Stand in front of the pedelec. Clamp the front wheel between your legs. Grasp the handlebar grips.
- 2 Try to twist the handlebars against the direction of the front wheel.
  - ⇒ The stem must not move or twist.
- 3 If the stem can be twisted, check fastening.
  - ⇒ If the stem cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

### 5.3.5.2 Checking stem is firmly in position

- 1 Press full body weight on the handlebars.
  - ⇒ The handlebars must not move downwards in the fork.

#### Stem with clamping lever version I

- 2 If the handlebars should move, increase the lever tension in the clamping lever.
- 3 Turn knurled nut in a clockwise direction with the clamping lever open.
- 4 Close clamping lever and check stem is firmly in position again.
- 5 If the handlebars cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

#### Stem with clamping lever version II and stem with screw

- ▶ If the handlebars cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

### 5.3.5.3 Checking the headset backlash

- 1 Place the fingers of one hand on the upper headset cup. Pull the front wheel brake with the other hand and try to push the pedelec backwards and forwards.
  - Keep in mind that there may be noticeable backlash due to worn-out bearing bushes or brake lining backlash in suspension forks and disc brakes.
  - ⇒ The headset cup halves must not move towards one another.
- 2 Set bearing clearance as per the stem repair manual as quickly as possible as otherwise the bearing will become damaged. Contact specialist dealer.

## 5.4 Pedelec sale

- ▶ Complete Pedelec pass on the operating instructions envelope.
- ▶ Note down the manufacturer and the number of the battery key.
- ▶ Adjust the pedelec to the rider; see Section 6.5.
- ▶ Adjust the stand and shifter.
- ▶ Brief operator or rider on all the pedelec's functions (see Section 6.3).

## 6 Operation

### 6.1 Risks and hazards

#### WARNING

##### Injuries and fatalities caused by blind spots

Other road users, trucks, cars and pedestrians often underestimate the speed of pedelecs. Likewise, other road users frequently do not see pedelecs. This may cause a crash with serious injuries or even death.

- ▶ Wear a helmet. The helmet must have a reflective strip or a light in a clearly visible colour.
- ▶ Clothing should be retroreflective or as light as possible. Fluorescent materials are also suitable. High-visibility jackets and straps on your upper body ensure even greater safety.
- ▶ Always take a defensive approach to riding.
- ▶ Avoid the blind spots of vehicles turning off the road. Reduce speed as a precaution when other road users turn right.

##### Injuries and death caused by riding incorrectly

A pedelec is not a bicycle. Incorrect riding and underestimated speeds soon result in hazardous situations. This can cause an accident with serious or fatal injuries.

- ▶ Slowly get used to road traffic and speed before riding at speeds over 12 km/h, especially if you have not ridden a bike for some time. Increase the levels of assistance gradually.
- ▶ Practice braking hard on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take and complete a riding safety course.

#### WARNING

##### Injuries and death caused by distraction

A lack of concentration while riding increases the risk of an accident. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow yourself to be distracted by the on-board computer or your mobile phone.
- ▶ Stop the pedelec if you want to make inputs on the on-board computer other than change the level of assistance. Only enter data when stationary.

#### CAUTION

##### Crash caused by loose clothing

Shoe laces, scarves and other loose items may become entangled in the spokes on the *wheels* and on the *chain drive*. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Wear sturdy footwear and close-fitting clothing.

##### Crash caused by difficult-to-spot damage

If the pedelec topples over or you have a fall or an accident, there may be difficult-to-spot damage to components such as the brake system, quick releases or frame. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

 **CAUTION**
**Crash caused by material fatigue**

Intensive use can cause material fatigue. A component may suddenly fail in case of material fatigue. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Remove the pedelec from service immediately if there are any signs of material fatigue. Have your specialist dealer inspect the component.
- ▶ Arrange the mandatory maintenance appointments with your specialist dealer on a regular basis. During maintenance, the specialist dealer will inspect the pedelec for any signs of material fatigue on the frame, fork, suspension element mountings (if there are any) and components made of composite materials.

Carbon becomes brittle when exposed to heat radiation such as heating. This can cause the carbon part to break and result in a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never expose carbon parts on the pedelec to strong sources of heat.

**Crash caused by poor road conditions**

Loose objects, such as branches and twigs, may become caught in the wheels and cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Be aware of the road conditions.
- ▶ Ride slowly and brake in good time.

The *tyres* may slip on wet roads. In wet conditions you must also expect a longer braking distance. The braking sensation differs from the usual sensation. This can cause loss of control or a crash, which may result in injuries.

- ▶ Ride slowly and brake in good time when it is raining.

 **CAUTION**
**Crash caused by soiling**

Heavy soiling can impair pedelec functions, such as braking. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Remove coarse soiling before riding.

**Notice**

Heat or direct sunlight can cause the *tyre pressure* to increase above the permitted maximum pressure. This can destroy the *tyres*.

- ▶ Never park the pedelec in the sun.
- ▶ On hot days, regularly check the *tyre pressure* and adjust it as necessary.

When riding downhill, high speeds may be reached. The pedelec is only designed to exceed a speed of 25 km/h for short intervals. The *tyres* in particular can fail if exposed to a continuous load.

- ▶ Use the brakes to decelerate the pedelec if you reach speeds greater than 25 km/h.

Moisture penetrating at low temperatures may impair individual functions due to the open structural design.

- ▶ Always keep the pedelec dry and free from frost.
- ▶ If the pedelec is used at temperatures below 3 °C, the specialist dealer must perform an inspection beforehand and prepared it for winter use.

Off-road riding subjects the joints in the arms to severe strain. Take a break from riding every 30 to 90 minutes, depending on the road surface and your physical fitness.

## 6.2 Tips for a greater range

The pedelec's range depends on many influencing factors. A single battery charge may only last fewer than 20 kilometres but much more than 100 is also possible. There are a few tips which will generally help you maximize range.

### Suspension elements

- ▶ Only open suspension fork and damper when necessary on terrain or gravel paths. Block suspension fork and damper on tarmacked roads or on hills.

### Mileage

The more own physical effort the rider makes, the greater the attainable range is.

- ▶ Shift down 1 to 2 gears to increase the induced power and pedalling frequency.

### Pedalling frequency

- ▶ Ride using pedalling frequencies of over 50 revolutions per minute. This optimises the electric drive's efficiency.
- ▶ Avoid pedalling very slowly.

### Weight

- ▶ Minimise the total weight of pedelec and baggage.

### Stopping and starting

- ▶ Ride long distances at a constant speed.
- ▶ Avoid stopping and starting frequently.

### Level of assistance

- ▶ The higher the selected levels of assistance are, the shorter the range is.

### Gear shift

- ▶ Use a low gear and a low level of assistance on hills and when setting off.
- ▶ Switch up a gear depending on the speed and terrain.
- ▶ 50-80 crank rotations are optimal.
- ▶ Avoid high stress loads on the crank during a gear change.
- ▶ Switch gear back in good time, e.g. before inclines.

### Tyres

- ▶ Always select the right tyres for the surface type. As a general rule, narrower treads move along more easily than heavier ones. Long studs and large grooves usually have an unfavourable effect on energy consumption.
- ▶ When riding on asphalt, it is important to always use the maximum permitted tyre pressure.
- ▶ When riding off-road on gravel tracks or soft woodland or meadow soils, it is important to remember the lower the tyre pressure is, the greater the rolling resistance is and thus the greater electric drive system energy consumption is.

### Rechargeable battery

Electrical resistance increases as the temperature drops. Battery performance is reduced. As a result, you should expect the range to be shorter than normal in winter.




- ▶ Use a thermal protection sleeve on the battery in winter.

The range also depends on the battery's age, charge level and state of repair.

- ▶ Maintain the battery and replace older batteries where necessary.

## 6.3 Error messages

### 6.3.1 Battery error message

The battery indicates errors with different LED statuses. The LED light patterns are lit (  ), non-lit (  ) and flashing (  ).






Type	Status	Lighting pattern	Remedy
System error	Communication error with the pedelec system.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check that the charging cable is firmly and properly connected.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
Temperature protection	If the temperature exceeds the guaranteed operating range, the battery will switch off.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Store battery in a cool place where there is no direct sunlight until the battery interior temperature has fallen sufficiently.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
Error during security authentication	This is displayed if no original drive unit is connected. This is displayed if one of the cables is not connected.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Connect original rechargeable battery and original drive unit.</li> <li>2 Check state of cables.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
Charge error	This is displayed if an error occurs during the charging process.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Remove connector between the battery and the charger.</li> <li>2 Press the On-Off button while the battery is connected only.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
Battery malfunction	Electrical fault in the battery.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Connect charger to the battery.</li> <li>2 Remove charger.</li> <li>3 Press the On-Off button while the battery is connected.</li> <li>4 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>

Table 25: Battery error messages

### 6.3.2 On-board computer warnings



Figure 59: Example: Warning W000

Code	Cause	Limitation	Remedy
W101 (W011)	No vehicle speed signal was detected by the speed sensor.	The maximum speed at which assistance is provided is lower than normal.	► Contact your specialist dealer.
W103 (W013)	Normal sensor initialisation could not be completed.	The drive will be lower than normal.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn the cranks backwards two or three times.</li> <li>2 If the problem persists, contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
W104	The power was switched off because a power loss was detected in the system.	No assistance provided when cycling.	► Contact your specialist dealer.
W105	Unexpected power cut-out detected.	The motor assistance functions are not restricted during display.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Re-start the system.</li> <li>2 If the problem persists, contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
W200 (W020)	The power was switched off because the temperature exceeded the guaranteed operating range.	System functions do not start.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 If the battery overheats, store in a cool place where there is no direct sunlight until the battery interior temperature has fallen sufficiently.</li> <li>2 If the battery has been exposed to excessive cooling, store in a warm room. Monitor and wait until the battery temperature has risen sufficiently.</li> </ol>
W302 (W032)	The fitted gear shift is different to the one configured in the system.	No shifting is possible.	► Contact your specialist dealer.

Table 26: List of warnings

## 6.4 Error message screen

If an error message is shown over the entire display, follow the procedure indicated below to reset the screen.

- 1 Press the **On-Off button (battery)**.
- 2 Remove the battery from the mount.
- 3 Replace the battery.
- 4 Start the system.



Figure 60: Example: Error message E010

Code	Cause	Limitation	Remedy
E010	An anomaly was detected in the drive unit.	No assistance provided when cycling.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Press the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b>.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
E020	A communication error was detected between the battery and the drive unit.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E021	The battery connected to the drive unit meets the system standards but is not compatible.	No assistance provided when cycling.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Press the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b>.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
E022	The battery connected to the drive unit does not meet the system standard.	Drive system does not start.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Insert correct battery.</li> <li>2 Press the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b>.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
E023	An electrical fault was detected inside the battery.	Drive system does not start.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Press the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b>.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
E024	The battery overcurrent protection was triggered. (Communication error in the drive system).	Drive system does not start.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E025	The battery does not detect the drive unit. (No original drive unit is connected or the power cable is disconnected.)	Drive system does not start.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Insert correct battery.</li> <li>2 Check power cable.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.</li> </ol>
E030	A gear shift unit that differs from the system configuration was fitted.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E033	The current firmware is not supported by this system.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E035	An anomaly was detected in the vehicle settings.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E043	Irregularity detected in this product's firmware. Part of the firmware may be damaged.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
E050 (E014)	A different vehicle speed signal was detected by the speed sensor.	No assistance provided when cycling.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.

Table 27: List of error messages



## 6.5 Instruction and customer service

The supplying specialist dealer will provide customer service. Contact details can be found on the pedevec pass for these operating instructions. The specialist dealer will explain all the pedevec functions to the new owner in person, this being when the specialist dealer hands over the pedevec at the latest. These operating instructions are provided with every pedevec, so that the rider can consult them at a later stage.

The supplying specialist dealer will also perform all maintenance, modifications and repairs in the future.

## 6.6 Adjusting the pedevec



### Crash caused by incorrectly adjusted torques

If a screw is fastened too tightly, it may break. If a screw is not fastened enough, it may loosen. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Always observe the indicated torques on the screw and in the operating instructions.

Only a correctly adjusted pedevec will guarantee the desired ride comfort and health-promoting activity.

All settings must be re-configured if the body weight or maximum baggage weight changes.

## 6.6.1 Preparing

The following tools are required to adjust the pedevec:









	Tape measure
	Scales
	Spirit level
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm and 15 mm
	Torque wrench Working range 5–40 Nm
	Hex key 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Cross-recess screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 28: Tools required for assembly

## 6.6.2 Pedelec adjustment procedure

► Observe the correct order for adjustment.

Sequence order	Adjustment	Section	For pedelecs with components only				
			Rhomboid seat post	Ergonomic handles	Suspension fork	Rear frame damper	Headlight
1.1	Saddle <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Straighten saddle</li> <li>• Adjust saddle height</li> <li>• Adjust saddle position</li> <li>• Adjust saddle tilt</li> </ul>	<a href="#">6.6.4.1</a>					
1.2		<a href="#">6.6.4.2</a>					
1.3		<a href="#">6.6.4.4</a>					
1.4		<a href="#">6.6.4.5</a>					
2	Handlebars	<a href="#">6.6.5</a>					
3	Stem	<a href="#">6.6.6</a>					
4	Handles	<a href="#">6.6.7</a>		x			
5	Tyres	<a href="#">6.6.8</a>					
6.1	Brake <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Position of the brake handles</li> <li>• Brake handle tilt angle</li> <li>• Determine grip distance</li> <li>• Pressure point (optional)</li> <li>• Retract brake linings</li> </ul>	<a href="#">6.6.9.1</a>					
6.2		<a href="#">6.6.9.2</a>					
6.3		<a href="#">6.6.9.3</a>					
6.4		<a href="#">6.5.9.8</a>					
6.5		<a href="#">6.6.9.5</a>					
7	Gear shift	<a href="#">6.6.10</a>					
8	Adjust suspension <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- adjust suspension fork sag</li> <li>- Adjust damper sag</li> </ul>	<a href="#">6.6.12</a> <a href="#">6.6.13</a>			x	x	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adjust the suspension fork rebound damper</li> <li>- Adjust rebound damper damper</li> </ul>	<a href="#">6.6.14</a> <a href="#">6.6.15</a>			x	x	
9	- Adjust damper compression adjuster	<a href="#">6.6.16</a>				x	
10	Light	<a href="#">6.6.17</a>					x
11	Adjust on-board computer	<a href="#">6.6.18</a>					
12	Connect external devices	<a href="#">6.6.18</a>					

### 6.6.3 Determining the sitting position

The starting point for a comfortable posture is the correct position of the pelvis. If the pelvis is in the wrong position, it can cause different types of pain, e.g. in the shoulder or back.

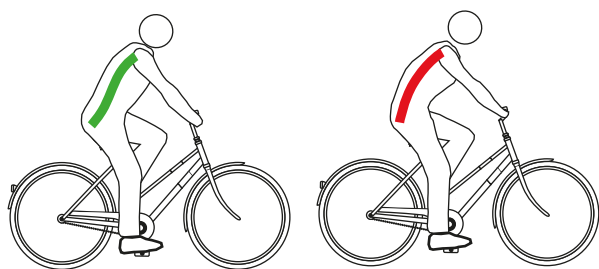


Figure 61: The pelvis is in the right position (green) or incorrect position (red)

The pelvis is in the right position if the spine forms an S-shape and a natural, easy arch.

The pelvis is positioned incorrectly if it tilts slightly backwards. As a result, the spine becomes curved and can no longer deflect to an optimal extent.

A suitable sitting position must be selected beforehand depending on the pedelec type, physical fitness and desired trip distance or speed.

It is especially advisable to check and optimise the sitting position once more before longer rides.

Position on trekking bike	Position on sports bike
<b>Angle of upper body (black dashed line)</b>	
Considerably inclined upper body, back at an angle of 30°–60°. Greater distance between handlebars and saddle.	Sharply inclined upper body, back at an angle of 15°–30°. Saddle higher than the handlebars.
<b>Angle between upper arm &amp; upper body (red line)</b>	
An angle of 90° is optimum. The muscular support required in the arms, back and shoulder girdle is reduced at 90°.	Above 90° Shoulders, arms and hands need to provide a great deal of support, the supporting muscles in the back are heavily strained and the load on the bearing surface shifts to the front.
<b>Saddle-handlebar height difference [cm] (blue and green line)</b>	
5...0 Handlebars and saddle are almost at the same height.	<0 The saddle is positioned far higher than the handlebars.
<b>Benefits</b>	
Shoulders, neck and hands provide more of the support effort, thus promoting a dynamic, agile riding style. Impact is reduced on the back, spine and buttocks, which is particularly important on longer rides. The whole body can apply force to the pedals effectively.	Optimum power transmission. Aerodynamic: low air resistance.
<b>Disadvantages</b>	
There is greater strain on the hands, neck and shoulders. The muscular system needs to be trained for this higher strain, i.e. riders should practise.	Requires highly trained muscles in back, legs, shoulders, abdomen! Comfortable position only for people who are fit.
<b>Fitness level and use</b>	
Medium to high fitness level, riding long distances.	Speed-oriented, sports cycling.

Table 29: Overview of sitting positions

## 6.6.4 Adjusting the saddle

### 6.6.4.1 Straightening the saddle

- ▶ Position saddle in direction of travel. In doing so, align the tip of the saddle with the top tube.

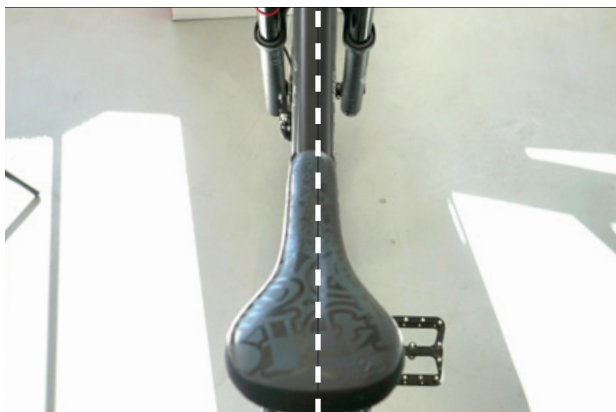


Figure 62: Positioning the saddle in direction of travel

### Positioning the saddle with eightpins suspension seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Position saddle in direction of travel. In doing so, align the tip of the saddle with the top tube.
- 2 Use a torque wrench to tighten the seat post axle with 8 Nm.



Figure 63: Tightening the seat post axle

### 6.6.4.2 Adjusting the saddle height

- ✓ To adjust the saddle height safely, either:
    - Push the pedelec near to a wall so that the rider can lean on the wall to support themselves or
    - Ask another person to hold the pedelec.
- 1 Use the seat height formula to roughly set the saddle height:  
Seat height ( $SH$ ) = inner leg length ( $I$ )  $\times$  0.9
  - 2 Climb onto the bicycle.
  - 3 Place your heel on the pedal and extend your leg, so that the pedal is at the lowest crank rotation point. Your knee should now be fully extended.

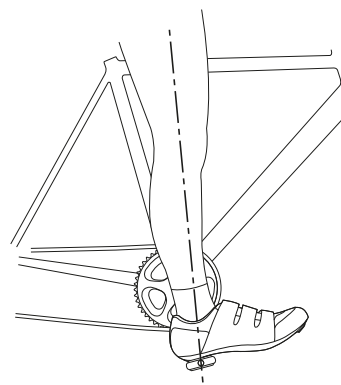


Figure 64: Heel method

- 4 Take a test ride.
  - ⇒ Riders should sit straight on the saddle at an optimal saddle height.
    - If the pelvis moves to the left and right as you pedal, the saddle is too high.
    - If your knees are painful after a few kilometres, the saddle is too low.
  - ⇒ Position the seat post according to needs if necessary. Adjust the seat height with the quick release.

- 5 Open the quick release on the seat post to change the seat height (1). To do so, push the clamping lever away from the seat post (3).

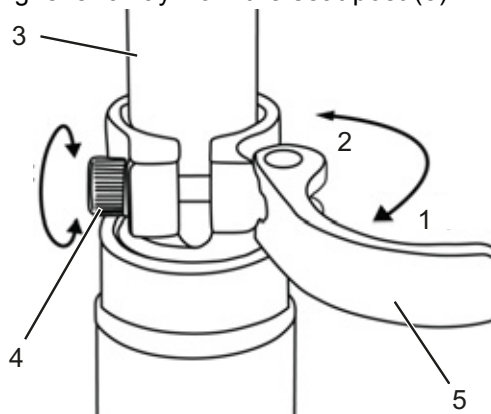


Figure 65: Opening the seat post quick release

- 6 Set the seat post to the required height.



**Crash caused by an excessively high seat post setting**

A seat post which is set too high will cause the seat post or the frame to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Do not pull the seat post out of the frame beyond the minimum insertion depth marking.

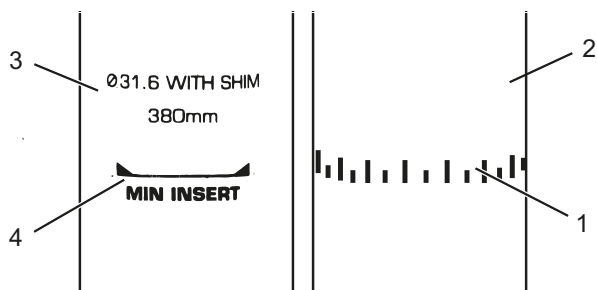


Figure 66: Detailed view of the seat post – examples of the minimum insertion depth marking

- 7 To close it, push the seat post clamping lever as far as it will go into the seat post (2).
- 8 Check the clamping force of the quick releases.

**6.6.4.3 Setting the saddle height with the remote control**

Use the seat height formula to set the saddle height:

$$\text{Seat height (SH)} = \text{inner leg length (I)} \times 0.9$$

**Notice**

If you are unable to achieve the required saddle height, the seat post must be lowered further into the seat tube. The seat post Bowden cable must be tightened in the frame up to the remote control to the same length as the seat post was lowered. If this is not possible, contact your specialist dealer.

**Lowering the saddle**

- 1 Sit on the saddle.
- 2 Press the remote control operating lever.
  - ⇒ The seat post will lower.
- 3 Release the remote control operating lever when you have reached the desired height.

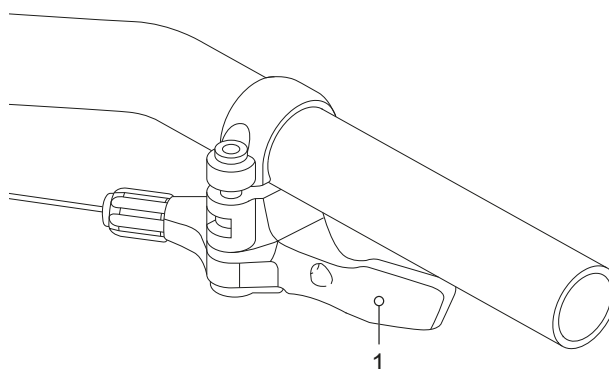


Figure 67: Remote control operating lever (1)

**Raising the saddle**

- 1 Remove any pressure from the saddle.
- 2 Press the remote control operating lever.
  - ⇒ The seat post will rise.
- 3 Release the remote control operating lever when you have reached the desired height.

#### 6.6.4.4 Adjusting the saddle position

The saddle can be shifted on the saddle frame. The right horizontal position ensures an optimal leverage position for legs. This prevents knee pain and painful incorrect pelvis positions. If you have displaced the saddle more than 10 mm, you need to adjust the saddle height again since both settings affect one another.

- ✓ The saddle setting must only be made when the bicycle is stationary.
- ✓ To set the saddle position, either:
  - Push the pedelec near to a wall so that the rider can lean on the wall to support themselves or
  - Ask another person to hold the pedelec.
- ✓ Move the saddle within its permitted displacement range only (marked on the saddle stay).

1 Climb onto the pedelec.

2 Place the pedals into the vertical position with your feet.

⇒ Riders are adopting the optimal saddle position if the perpendicular line from the kneecap runs through the pedal axle.

- ▶ If the perpendicular line crosses behind the pedal, bring the saddle further forward.
- ▶ If the perpendicular line crosses in front of the pedal, bring the saddle further back.

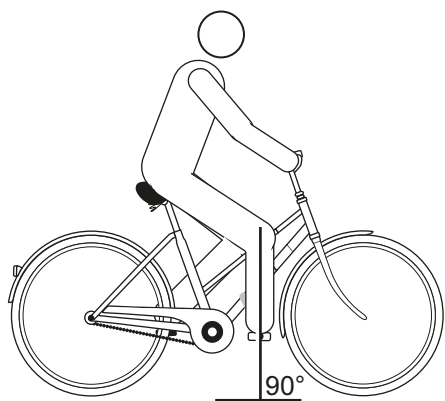


Figure 68: Knee cap perpendicular line

- 3 Unfasten and adjust the designated screw connections, and clamp them with the maximum tightening torque for the saddle clamping screws.

#### 6.6.4.5 Adjusting the saddle tilt

The saddle tilt must be adjusted to the seat height, the saddle and handlebar position, and the saddle shape to ensure an optimum fit. The seating position can be optimised in this way if needed.

The saddle placed in a horizontal position prevents the rider from slipping backwards or forwards. This avoids seat problems. In any other position, the tip of the saddle may press uncomfortably into the crotch area. It is also recommended that the centre of the saddle is exactly straight. This ensures that the rider is seated with their sit bones on the wide rear part of the saddle.

1 Adjust the saddle tilt to horizontal.

2 Position saddle middle so that it is completely straight.

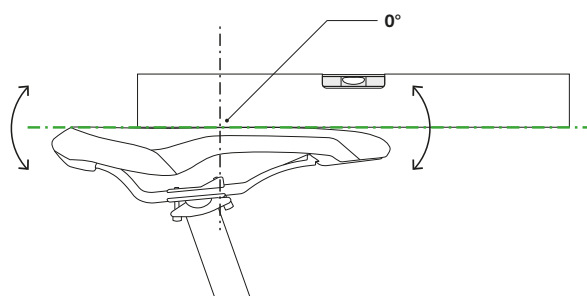


Figure 69: Horizontal saddle tilt with 0° tilt in the centre of the saddle

⇒ Riders sit comfortably on the saddle and do not slip backwards or forwards.

- 3 If the rider tends to slip forwards or sit on the narrow part of the saddle, adjust the seat position (see Section 6.6.2.3) or tilt the saddle very slightly backwards.

#### 6.6.4.6 Checking saddle stability

- ▶ Check saddle stability after adjusting it; see Section 7.5.6.

## 6.6.5 Handlebars

- ▶ Check handlebar width and hand position.
- ▶ Choose different handlebars if necessary. Contact specialist dealer.

### 6.6.5.1 Handlebar width

The handlebar width should be as wide as the rider's shoulders as a minimum. This is measured from mid-point to mid-point on the hand contact surfaces.

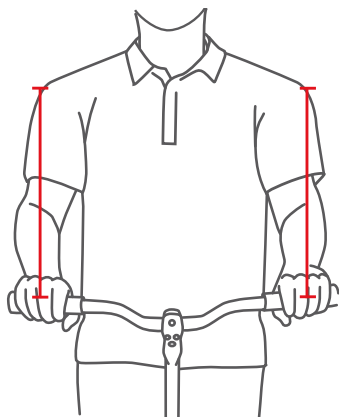


Figure 70: Determining the optimal handlebar width

The wider the handlebars are, the more control they provide, although wide handlebars require greater supporting force. Wider handlebars are particularly useful to ensure a safer ride for loaded touring bikes.

### 6.6.5.2 Hand position

The hand is in an optimal position on the handlebars when the forearm and hand are in a straight line, i.e. the wrist is not bent. In this way, the nerves are not pinched and do not cause pain.

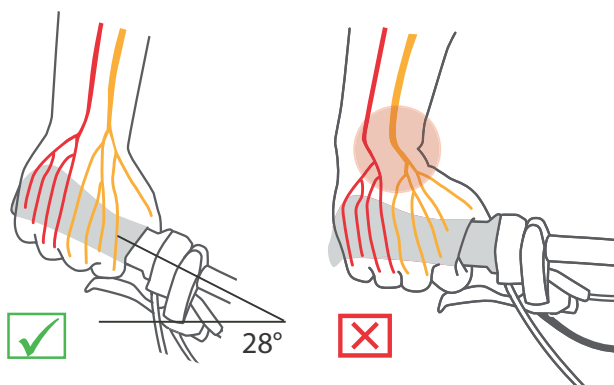


Figure 71: Distribution of nerves with curved and straight handlebars

The narrower the shoulders are, the greater the bend of the handlebars should be (maximum 28°).

Straight handlebars are advisable for sports bikes (e.g. MTB). They support direct steering behaviour, but lead to peaks in pressure and greater muscular strain on the arm and shoulder muscles.

### 6.6.5.3 Adjusting the handlebars

The handlebars and their position determine the posture that the rider adopts on the pedelec.

- 1 After selecting the seating position (see Section 6.6.2.1), determine the angle of the upper body and of the upper arm.
- 2 Pre-tension the back muscles when adjusting the handlebars. The only way to stabilise the spine and protect it from excessive strain is with the back and abdominal muscles pre-tensioned. Passive muscles are not able to perform this important task.
- 3 Set the required handlebar position by adjusting the stem height and angle (see Section 6.6.6).
- 4 After adjusting the handlebars, check the saddle height and seat position again. The position of the pelvis on the saddle may have changed when the handlebars were adjusted. This can have considerable impact on the position of the hip joint due to the pelvis tilting and may change the usable leg length on the saddle support by up to 3 cm.
- 5 Correct the saddle height and sitting posture if necessary.

## 6.6.6 Stem

### 6.6.6.1 Adjusting the handlebar height with quick release

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Open the stem clamping lever.

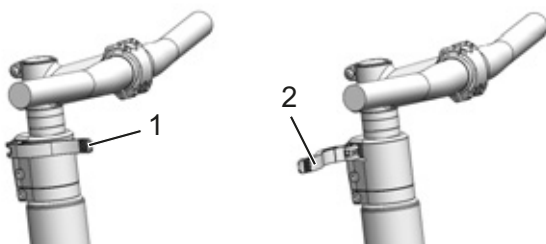


Figure 72: Open (2) and closed (1) stem clamping lever; All Up used as an example

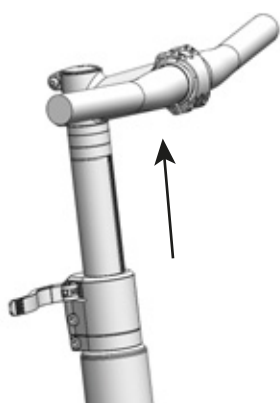


Figure 73: Pulling the locking lever upwards; All Up used as an example

- 2 Pull out the handlebars to the required height. Observe minimum insertion depth.
- 3 Close the stem clamping lever.

### Adjusting the quick release clamping force



#### Crash caused by incorrectly set clamping force

Applying excessive clamping force damages the quick release. Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. This can cause components to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).

If the *handlebar clamping lever* stops before reaching its end position, unscrew the *knurled nut*.

- ▶ Tighten the *knurled nut* on the seat post if the *seat post clamping lever's* clamping force is not effective enough.
- ▶ Contact your specialist dealer if the clamping force cannot be set.



### 6.6.6.2 Setting the quill stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

In the case of a quill stem, the stem and fork steerer form a permanently interconnected component, which is clamped in the fork steerer. The stem and shaft must be replaced together.

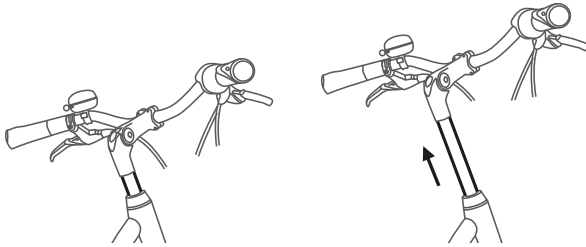


Figure 74: Adjusting the quill stem height

- 1 Undo screw.
- 2 Pull quill stem out.
- 3 Tighten screw.

### 6.6.6.3 Adjusting the Ahead stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

In the case of an Ahead stem, the stem is placed directly on the fork steerer, which protrudes over the frame.

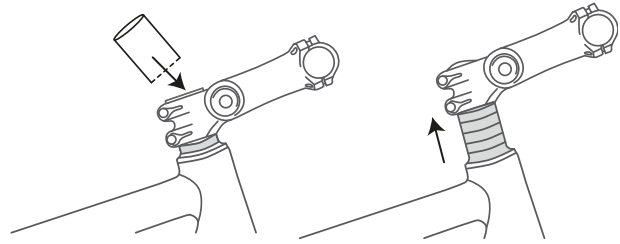


Figure 75: Raising the Ahead stem by fitting spacer rings

The handlebar height is adjusted once during production using spacer rings. The part of the fork steerer protruding is then cut off. The handlebar stem can then no longer be raised.

#### 6.6.6.4 Adjusting the angle-adjustable stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Angle-adjustable stems are available in different lengths for quill and Ahead stems.

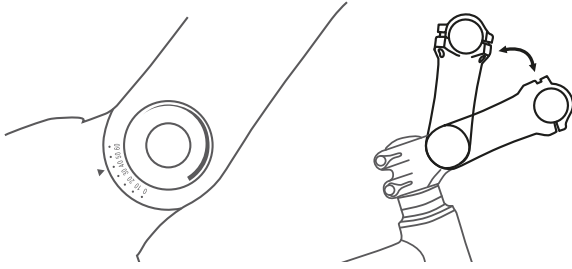


Figure 76: Different versions of angle-adjustable stems

Adjusting the stem angle (c) changes both the distance from the upper body to the handlebars (b) and the handlebar height (a).

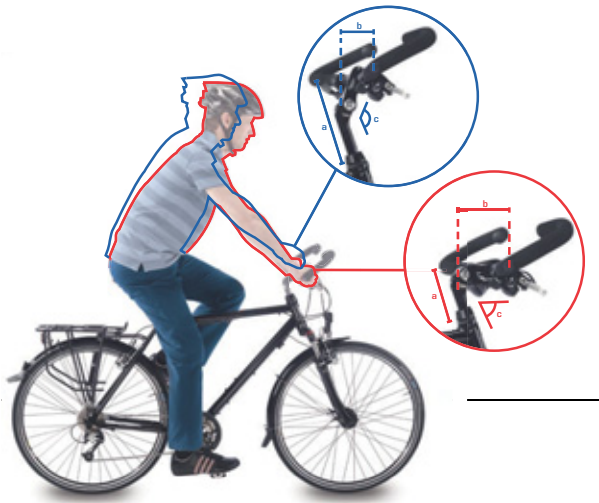


Figure 77: City bike (blue) and trekking bike position (red) by changing the angle

### 6.6.7 Ergonomic handles

In the case of ergonomically shaped handles, the palm rests on the anatomically shaped handle. A greater contact surface means that the pressure is more evenly distributed. Nerves and vessels are no longer squeezed in the carpal tunnel.

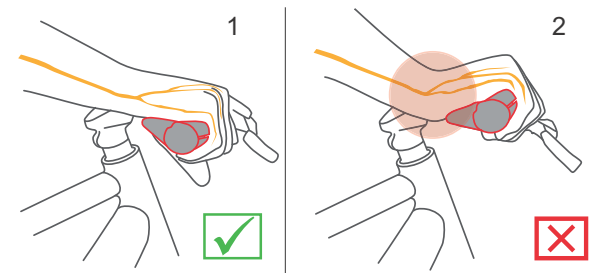


Figure 78: Correct (1) and incorrect (2) position of the handle

- 1 Undo the handle screw.
- 2 Turn handle into the right position.
- 3 Tighten the screw.

#### 6.6.7.1 Checking handlebar stability

► See [Section 7.5.5](#).

## 6.6.8 Tyres

It is not possible to offer a general recommended tyre pressure for a particular pedelec or tyre. The correct tyre pressure largely depends on the weight load on the tyres, mainly determined by body weight and baggage.

Unlike cars, the weight of the vehicle has only a small impact on the total weight. Moreover, the personal preferences for low rolling resistance or a high degree of suspension comfort vary a great deal. It is important to remember that

- the higher the tyre pressure is, the lower the wear, rolling resistance and the risk of breakdown are.
- The lower the pressure in the tyre is, the greater the comfort and grip that the tyre offers is.

In the case of pedelecs used on the road, the rule is the greater the tyre pressure is, the lower the tyre rolling resistance is. The risk of breakdown is also lower when the pressure is high.

A permanently excessively low tyre pressure often leads to premature wear in the tyre. Cracking in the side wall is a typical consequence of very low tyre pressure. Abrasion is also unnecessarily high.

On the other hand, a tyre can absorb road impacts more effectively at a low pressure.

As a general rule, wide tyres are operated at a lower tyre pressure. They provide the option of exploiting the advantages of the lower tyre pressure without the serious disadvantages it causes with regard to wear, rolling resistance and breakdown protection.

- ✓ Never exceed or go below the minimum and maximum pressure limits indicated on the tyre.

- 1 Pump the tyre to the recommended tyre pressure.

Tyre width	Tyre pressure in bar for body weight		
	about 60 kg	about 80 kg	about 110 kg
25 mm	6.0	7.0	8.0
28 mm	5.5	6.5	7.5
32 mm	4.5	5.5	6.5
37 mm	4.0	5.0	6.0
40 mm	3.5	4.5	6.0
47 mm	3.0	4.0	5.0
50 mm	2.5	4.0	5.0
55 mm	2.0	3.0	4.0
60 mm	2.0	3.0	4.0

Table 30: Recommended tyre pressure for Schwalbe

- 2 Perform a visual check on tyres.



Figure 79: Correct tyre pressure. The tyre is barely deformed under the load of the body weight



Figure 80: Much too little tyre pressure

## 6.6.9 Brake

The brake lever grip distance can be adjusted to ensure that it can be reached more easily. The pressure point can also be adjusted to the rider's preferences.

### 6.6.9.1 Brake handle position

Having the brake handle in the correct position prevents the rider from stretching their wrist too far. Moreover, the brake can also be operated without any discomfort and without changing the handle position or releasing the handle.

- ✓ Apply the brake lever with the third finger phalanx to brake gently in bursts.
  - ✓ The setting for the middle finger is used for riders who brake with their middle finger or with two fingers.
- 1 Position your hand on the handle in such a way that the outer heel of the hand is flush with the end of the handlebar.
  - 2 Extend the index finger (about 15°).

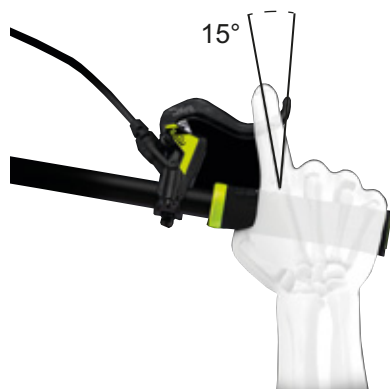


Figure 81: Brake handle position

- 3 Push brake lever outwards until the third finger phalanx sits in the brake lever recessed grip.

### 6.6.9.2 Brake handle tilt angle

The nerves that pass through the carpal tunnel are connected to the thumb and the index and middle fingers. An excessively steep or excessively flat brake angle will cause the wrist to bend, thus narrowing the carpal tunnel. This can cause numbness and tingling in the thumb and index and middle fingers.

- 1 Calculate the difference between the height of the handlebars and the saddle height to determine the saddle-handlebar height difference.

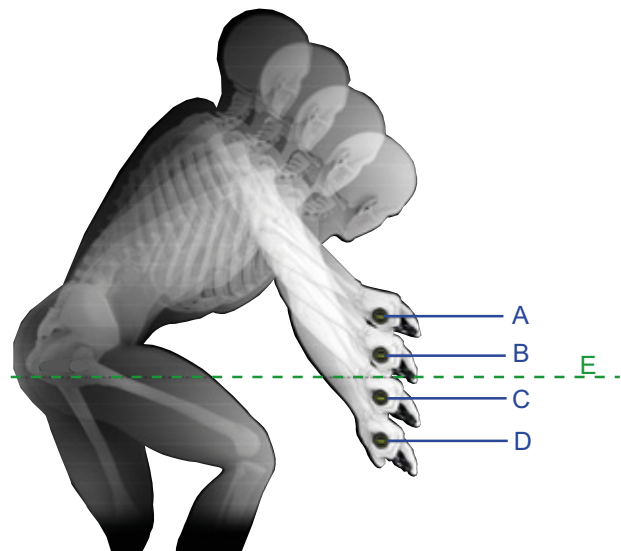


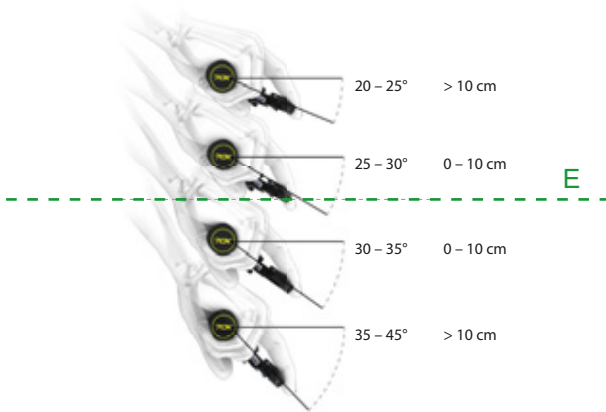
Figure 82: Example of 4 different handlebar heights (A, B, C and D) and the saddle height (E)

Calculation	Saddle-handlebar height difference [mm]
A – E	>10
B – E	0...10
C – E	0 ...-10
D – E	<-10

Table 31: Examples of saddle-handlebar height difference

Adjust the angle of the brake levers so that they form a natural extension of the forearm.

- 2 Set the brake lever angle as indicated in the table.



Saddle-handlebar height difference (mm)	Brake angle
>10	20°...25°
0...10	25°...30°
0...-10	30°...35°
< -10	35°...45°

Figure 83: Brake angle

### 6.6.9.3 Determining the grip distance

- 1 Measure hand size using the grip distance gauge.
- 2 Adjust the grip distance at the pressure point based on the hand size.



Hand size	Grip distance (cm)
S	2
M	3
L	4

Figure 84: Brake lever position

#### 6.6.9.4 Grip distance on a SHIMANO ST-EF41 brake lever

Only applies to pedelecs with brakes:

BL-M4100

BL-M7100

BL-M8100

BL-MT200

BL-MT201

BL-MT400

BL-MT401

BL-MT402

BL-T6000

GRX ST-RX600

M7100

M8100

RS785

The brake lever position can be adjusted to the rider's requirements. Contact your specialist dealer.

### 6.6.9.5 Retracting the brake linings

Disc brakes require wearing-in time. The braking force increases over time. The braking force is increased during break-in time. This is also the case when the brake pads or brake discs are replaced.

- 1 Accelerate pedelec to 25 km/h.
- 2 Brake pedelec until it comes to a halt.
- 3 Repeat process 30 to 50 times.

The disc brake is retracted and provides optimal braking power.



## 6.6.10 Gear shift

Adjust the position of the gear shift to the rider's needs.

1 Undo attachment screw.

2 Place control panel or shifter into the position where the rider can use the control panel or the shifter with their thumb and/or index finger.

3 Tighten attachment screw.

### 6.6.10.1 SHIMANO shifter

Only applies to vehicles with this equipment

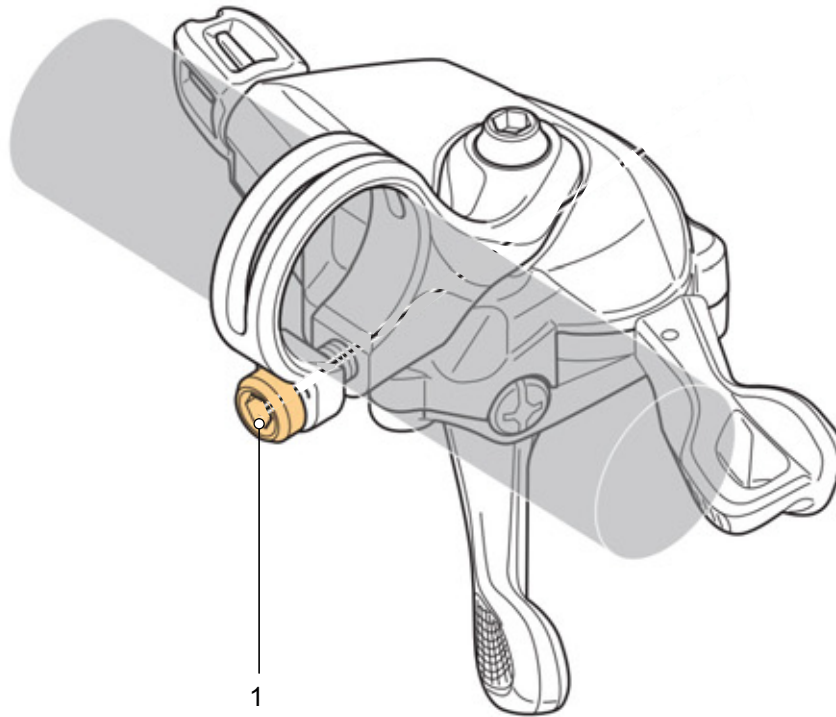


Figure 85: Position of attachment screw in SHIMANO shifter

Model	Tightening torque	Screw
DEORE SL-M4100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
DEORE SL-M5100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
DEORE SL-M6100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
DEORE XT SL-M8100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
DEORE XT SL-M8130	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SLX SL-M7100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
XTR SL-M9100	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit

Table 32: Tightening torque and bits for SHIMANO gear shift

## 6.6.11 Suspension

A pedelec's fork suspension and rear frame damper suspension can be adjusted to the rider's weight in up to six increments, depending on the suspension system.

► Follow the the correct order for adjustment.

Sequence	Adjustment	Section	For pedelecs with components only	
			Suspension fork	Rear frame damper
1	Adjust the suspension fork sag	<a href="#">6.6.12</a>	x	
2	Adjust the rear frame damper sag			x
3	Adjust suspension fork rebound damper	<a href="#">6.6.14</a>	x	
4	Adjust rear frame damper rebound damper			x
5	Adjust the rear frame damper compression adjuster			x
6	The fork compression adjuster is adjusted to the terrain while riding	<a href="#">6.23</a>		

**Table 33: Order for adjusting the suspension**

## 6.6.12 Fork sag



**CAUTION**

### Crash caused by incorrectly set suspension

If the suspension is set incorrectly, the fork may become damaged, meaning problems may occur when steering. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- Never ride without air in the air suspension fork.
- Never use the pedelec without adjusting the suspension fork to the body weight.

Settings on the chassis change riding performance significantly. The rider needs to get used to the pedelec and break it in to prevent accidents.

The sag depends on the position and body weight and should be between 10% and 30% of the maximum fork deflection, depending on preferences and on how the pedelec is used.

### Greater sag (20% to 30%)

A greater sag increases sensitivity to bumps, thus producing greater suspension motion. A greater sensitivity to bumps ensures more comfortable ride performance and is used on pedelecs with a longer deflection.

### Decreased sag (10% to 20%)

A decreased sag reduces sensitivity to bumps, thus producing less suspension motion. A lower sensitivity to bumps ensures a firmer, more efficient ride and is generally used on pedelecs with a shorter deflection.

The adjustment shown here represents a basic setting. The rider should change the basic setting to suit the surface and their preferences.

It is advisable to make a note of the basic settings. These can then be used a starting point for subsequent settings and as a safeguard against unintentional changes.

### 6.6.12.1 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX fork coil spring with spacer for pre-tensioning

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Put on normal cycling clothing (including baggage).
- 2 Ask someone to hold the pedelec.
- 3 Stand on the pedals. Allow the damper to deflect three times. Sit or stand on the pedelec in a normal riding position.
- 4 Ask your helper to push the O-ring downwards until it reaches the top of the dust wiper seal.

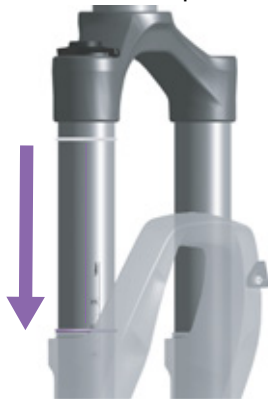


Figure 86: Moving the O-ring on the suspension fork

- 5 Get off the pedelec without allowing it to deflect.
- 6 Note distance between dust wiper and the O-ring. This distance is the sag.

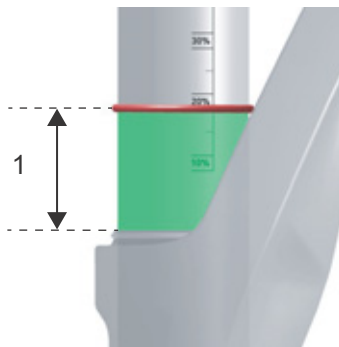


Figure 87: Sag (1)

- 7 Check the sag.

Setting	Sag
Prohibited	>30%
High sensitivity	20–30%
Low sensitivity	10–20%
Prohibited	<10

Table 34: Recommended sag

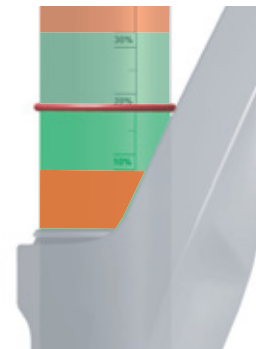


Figure 88: Mandatory sag range (green) and prohibited sag range (red)

- 8 If the desired sag is not achieved, the spring preload must be adjusted internally and/or the coil spring replaced. Contact your specialist dealer.



## 9 Adjusting preload internally

- ▶ Only your specialist dealer may make an internal adjustment to the preload.

Preload spacers compress or decompress the spring without changing deflection.



Figure 89: Screwing and unscrewing the preload adjustment ring

The coil spring can be preloaded with the maximum number of preload spacers specified for the fork model in question.

The coil spring can be preloaded with the maximum number of preload spacers specified for the fork model in question.

- ▶ Remove spacers to reduce preload and increase the sag.
- ▶ Fit spacers to increase preload and decrease sag.

You will find instructions on adjusting the preload internally in the RockShox maintenance instructions.

## 10 Check the sag.

The spring preload setting can be used to finely adjust the sag; However, the preload does not change spring stiffness and is not suitable to substitute the correct compression spring rate.

- ▶ If the desired sag is not achieved with the maximum number of spacers, you must replace the coil spring with a harder spring.
- ▶ If the desired sag cannot be achieved without a preload spacer, you must replace the coil spring with a softer spring.

### 6.6.12.2 Adjusting the RockShox coil spring with an external preload adjuster

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Turn the preload adjustment ring anti-clockwise until it locks into position anticlockwise.

⇒ The lowest, i.e. softest spring preload is set.

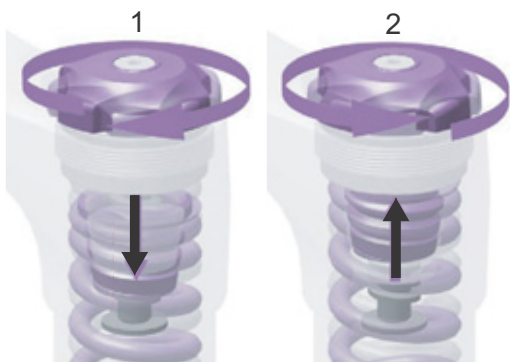


Figure 90: Screwing (1) and unscrewing (2) the preload adjustment ring.

- 2 Put on normal cycling clothing. Ask someone to hold the bicycle.
- 3 Stand on the pedals. Allow the damper to deflect three times. Sit or stand on the bicycle in a normal riding position.
- 4 Ask your helper to push the O-ring downwards until it reaches the top of the dust wiper seal.

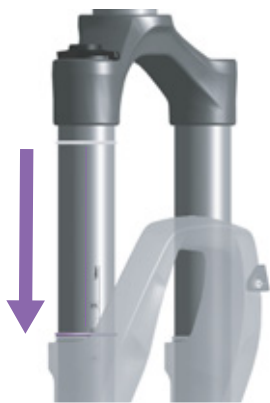


Figure 91: Moving the O-ring on the suspension fork

- 5 Get off the pedelec without allowing it to deflect.

- 6 Note distance between dust wiper and the O-ring. This distance is the sag.

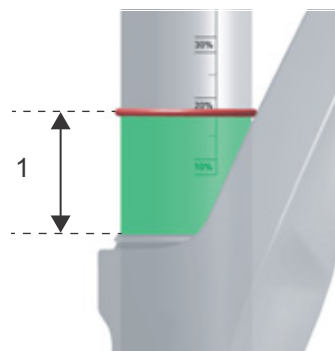


Figure 92: Sag (1)

Setting	Sag
Prohibited	>30%
High sensitivity	20–30%
Low sensitivity	10–20%
Prohibited	<10

Table 35: Recommended sag

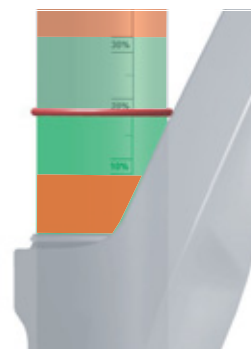


Figure 93: Mandatory sag range (green) and prohibited sag range (red)

- 7 If the desired sag is not achieved, the preload adjustment ring must be unscrewed bit by bit.

- 8 The coil spring must be replaced if the desired sag cannot be achieved by twisting the preload adjustment ring. Contact your specialist dealer.



**6.6.12.3 ROCKSHOX Paragon Silver coil spring**  
**Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment**

- 1 Put on your normal cycling clothing, including baggage. Ask someone to hold the bicycle. Stand on the pedals while wearing cycling clothing. Allow the damper to deflect three times. Sit or stand on the bicycle in a normal riding position.
- 2 Ask your helper to push the **O-ring** downwards until it reaches the top of the dust wiper seal.

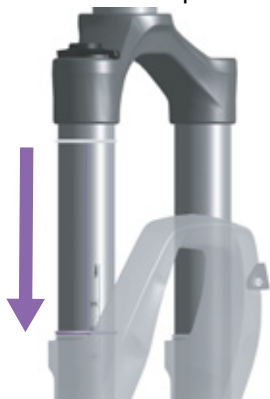


Figure 94: Moving the O-ring on the suspension fork

- 3 Get off the pedelec without allowing it to deflect.
- 4 Note distance between dust wiper and the O-ring. This distance is the sag.

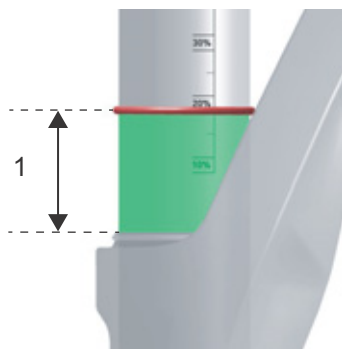


Figure 95: Sag (1)

- 5 Check the sag.

Setting	Sag
Prohibited	>30%
High sensitivity	20–30%
Low sensitivity	10–20%
Prohibited	<10

Table 36: Recommended sag

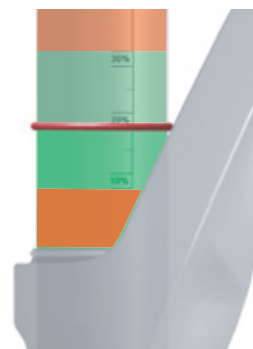


Figure 96: Mandatory sag range (green) and prohibited sag range (red)

- 6 If the desired sag is not achieved, the spring preload must be adjusted internally and/or the coil spring replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

**Adjusting preload internally**



- ▶ Only your specialist dealer may make an internal adjustment to the preload.

Preloading the coil spring on ROCKSHOX Paragon forks is an internal adjustment that compresses or decompresses the spring without changing the deflection.

The coil spring can be preloaded 5 mm or 10 mm using the internal preload spacer.



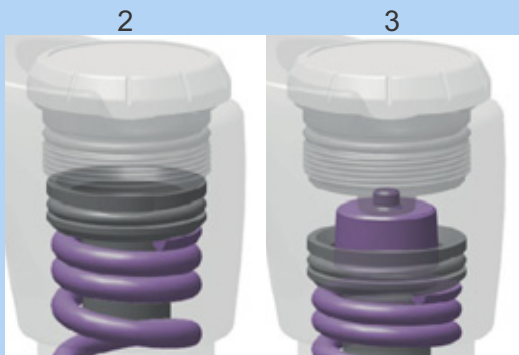
**7** Take off the cover cap to remove or reposition the preload spacer.

⇒ On a new vehicle, the 5-mm preload position of the preload spacer is positioned as standard (1).



**Figure 97: Screwing and unscrewing the preload adjustment ring**

- ▶ Remove the preload spacer to reduce the preload and increase the sag (2).
- ▶ Move the preload spacer to the 10-mm preload position to increase preload and reduce the sag (3).



**Figure 98: Screwing and unscrewing the preload adjustment ring**

**8** Check the sag.

### 6.6.12.4 Adjusting the RockShox fork air suspension

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

✓ The pressure should be measured at an ambient temperature of 21 °C to 24 °C.

- 1 Place all dampers in the open position before adjusting the sag.
- ▶ Turn the adjuster anti-clockwise until it will go no further.

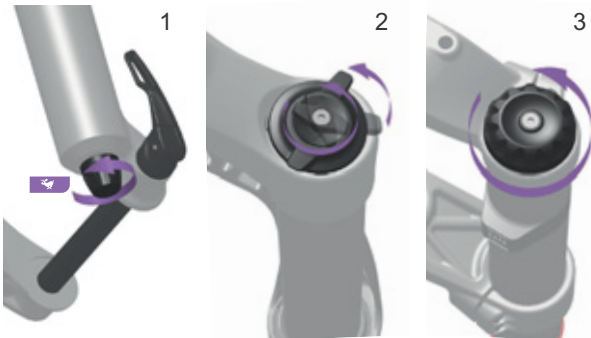


Figure 99: Opening the rebound damper (1) and compression adjuster (2 and 3)

- ▶ If the pedelec has a handlebar remote control, position the compression dashpot in the open position.
- 2 The **air valve** is located under a cover on the head of the shock absorber. Unscrew the **air valve cap** in an anti-clockwise direction.

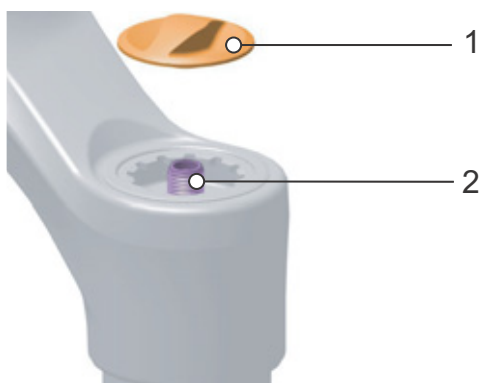


Figure 100: Removing the cover (1) from the air valve (2)

- 3 Place a high-pressure pump on the valve.
- 4 Pump the suspension fork to the required pressure. Observe the levels in the air pressure table.

Body weight	ROCKSHOX LYRIK SELECT	
	psi	bar
kg		
<55	<55	<3.8
55 - 63	55–65	3.8–4.5
63 - 72	65–75	4.5–5.2
72 - 81	75–85	5.2–5.9
81 - 90	85–95	5.9–6.6
90 - 99	95–105	6.6–6.8
>99	105+	6.8+
<b>Max. pressure</b>	<b>163</b>	<b>11.2</b>

Table 37: Filling pressure table for RockShox LYRIK SELECT air fork

- 5 The recommendations for air pressure in the front wheel suspension are also indicated on the rear of the fork and can be found at <https://trailhead.rockshox.com/en>.
- 6 Remove the high-pressure pump.
- 7 Put on normal cycling clothing (including baggage).
- 8 Ask someone to hold the pedelec. Stand on the pedals. Allow the damper to deflect three times. Sit or stand on the pedelec in a normal riding position.
- 9 Ask your helper to push the **O-ring** downwards until it reaches the top of the dust wiper seal.

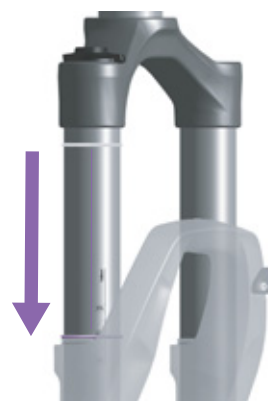


Figure 101: Moving the O-ring on the suspension fork



- 10** Get off the pedelec without allowing it to deflect. Measure or read the distance between the dust wiper and the O-ring end or cable tie. This measurement is the sag. The recommended sag is between 10% and 20% (hard) or 20% to 30% (soft).



**Figure 102:** Mandatory sag range (green) and prohibited sag range (red)

- 11** Increase or reduce the air pressure until you have reached the desired sag. If the sag is correct, tighten the **air valve cap** on the valve in a clockwise direction.
- 12** If you are unable to achieve the desired sag, internal settings may need to be made. Contact your specialist dealer.

### 6.6.13 Adjust the rear frame damper sag

Settings on the chassis change ride performance significantly. The rider needs to get used to the pedelec and break it in to prevent accidents.

#### **Greater sag (20%–30%)**

A greater sag increases sensitivity to bumps, thus producing greater suspension motion. A greater sensitivity to bumps ensures more comfortable ride performance and is used on pedelecs with a longer deflection.

#### **Decreased sag (10%– 20%)**

A decreased sag reduces sensitivity to bumps, thus producing less suspension motion. A lower sensitivity to bumps ensures a firmer, more efficient ride performance and is generally used on pedelecs with a shorter deflection.

The adjustment shown here represents a basic setting. The rider should change the basic setting to suit the surface and their preferences.

It is advisable to make a note of the basic settings. These can then be used as a starting point for subsequent optimised settings and as a safeguard against unintentional changes.

### 6.6.13.1 Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ The fork sag is adjusted.
- ✓ When adjusting the sag, ensure that all dampers are in the open position, i.e. turned anti-clockwise until they stop.

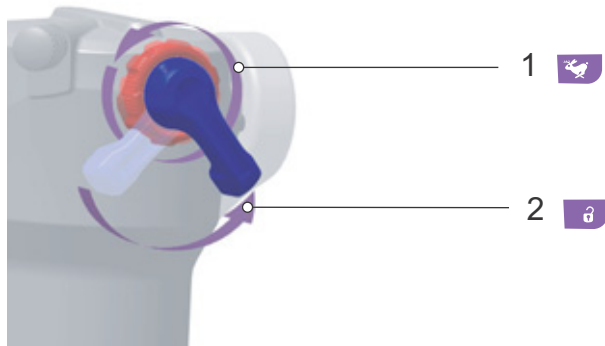


Figure 103: Opening the rebound damper (1) and compression adjuster (2)

- 1 Release air completely from rear frame damper.
- 2 Pressurise the air spring chamber to 100 PSI (6.9 bar) with a high-pressure damper pump.
- 3 Detach high-pressure damper pump.
- 4 Fully deflect rear frame damper five times to compensate the positive and negative air suspension.
- 5 Use a high-pressure damper pump to fill the rear frame damper to the pressure corresponding to the total weight of the person riding, including clothing and baggage.

#### Notice

If the air pressure in the rear frame damper is exceeded or undershot, the damper can be permanently damaged. The details are on the rear frame damper.

Weight		Air pressure	
Kilogram	Pound (lbs)	Pound per square inch	Bar
55	121	121	8.3
60	132	132	9.1
65	143	143	9.9
70	154	154	10.6
75	165	165	11.4
80	176	176	12.1
85	187	187	12.9
90	198	198	13.7
95	209	209	14.4
100	220	220	15.7
110	242	242	16.7

Table 38: Filling pressure table for ROCKSHOX rear frame dampers

- 6 Deflect rear frame damper to compensate the air pressure.
- 7 Put on normal cycling clothing (including baggage).
- 8 Ask someone to hold the bicycle. Stand on the pedals.
- 9 Deflect rear frame damper fully gently two or three times.
- 10 Ask your helper to push the O-ring against the wiper seal.



Figure 104: Moving the O-ring on the rear frame damper

**11** Read the sag value on the scale.

The optimum sag percentage is 25%. The sag level may be adjusted by  $\pm 5\%$ , depending on the rider's preferences (20% to 30%).

**12** The air pressure must be adjusted if the sag level is not reached.

- ▶ Increase the air pressure to reduce the sag.
- ▶ Decrease the air pressure to increase the sag.

## 6.6.14 Fork rebound damping

### Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Rebound damping in the suspension fork and the rear frame damper determines the speed at which the rear frame damper rebounds after being subjected to load. Rebound damping controls the suspension fork extension and rebound speed, which, in turn, has an impact on traction and control.

Rebound damping can be adjusted to body weight, spring stiffness, deflection, the terrain and the rider's preferences.

If the air pressure or spring stiffness increases, the extension and rebound speeds also increase.

Rebound damping needs to be increased to achieve an optimal setting if the air pressure or spring stiffness are increased.

The damper rebounds at a controlled speed if the fork is optimally adjusted. The wheel stays in contact with the ground when passing over bumps (blue line).

The fork head, handlebars and body follow terrain (green line) when riding over bumps. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled.

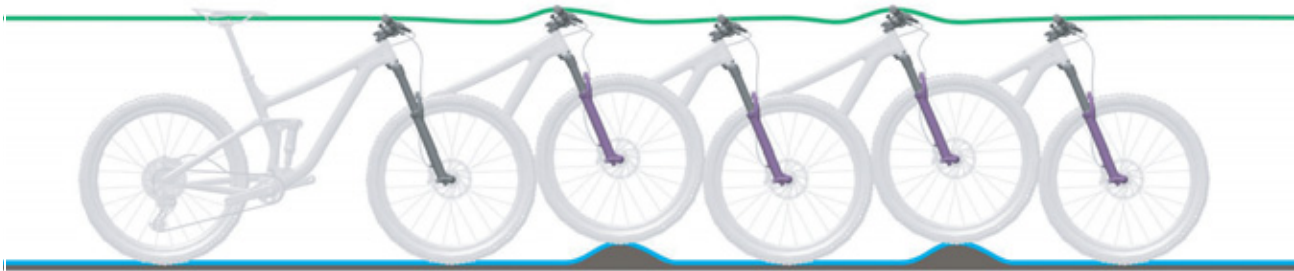


Figure 105: Optimum fork ride performance

### 6.6.14.1 Adjusting the RockShox suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

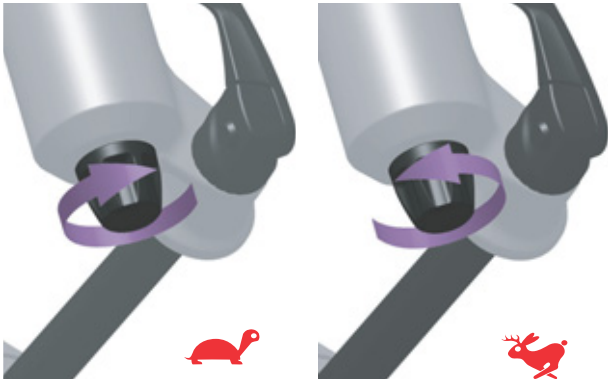


Figure 106: Adjusting the RockShox rebound

- ✓ The fork sag is adjusted.
- ▶ Turn the **rebound screw** clockwise damper towards the tortoise symbol.
  - ⇒ The rebound speed is decreased (slower return).
- ▶ Turn the **rebound screw** anti-clockwise towards the hare symbol.
  - ⇒ The rebound speed is increased (faster return).

## 6.6.15 Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper

### Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The rear frame damper rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The rear wheel does not bounce off rough surfaces or the ground; it stays in contact with the ground instead (blue line).

The saddle is raised slightly if the bump is compensated and gently sinks downwards when the suspension deflects as soon as the wheel touches the ground after the bump. The rear

frame damper rebounds in a controlled way, so that the rider remains sitting in a horizontal position when the next bump is absorbed. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled. The rider is not thrown upwards or forwards (green line).

The rebound adjuster setting depends on the air pressure setting. A higher sag requires lower rebound damping.

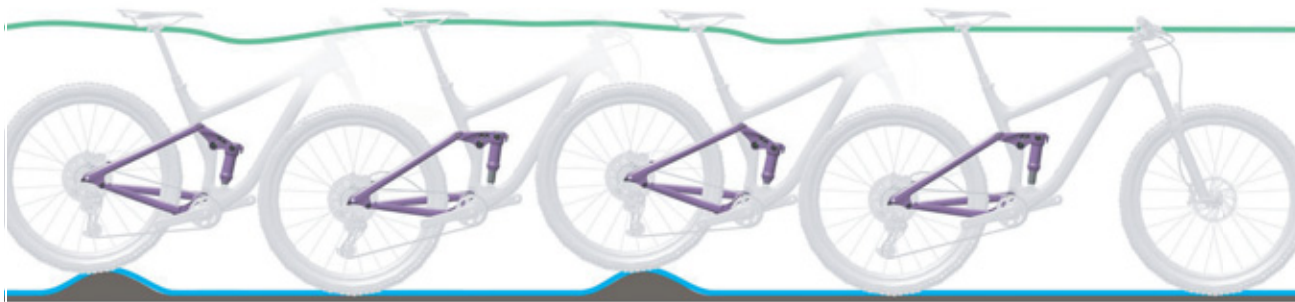


Figure 107: Optimum rear frame damper riding performance

The suspension rebound speed affects the wheel's contact with the ground, which, in turn, has an influence on control and efficiency. The damper should rebound fast enough to sustain traction without producing an erratic or bumpy sensation. If rebound damping is too tight, the damper is unable to rebound fast enough before the next impact.

Adjust the rebound damping in such a way that the rear frame damper rebounds quickly, but without bottoming out upwards. Bottoming out refers to when the rear frame damper rebounds too quickly and stops moving abruptly once it has reached the full rebound distance. You can hear and feel a slight impact when this happens.

### 6.6.15.1 Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

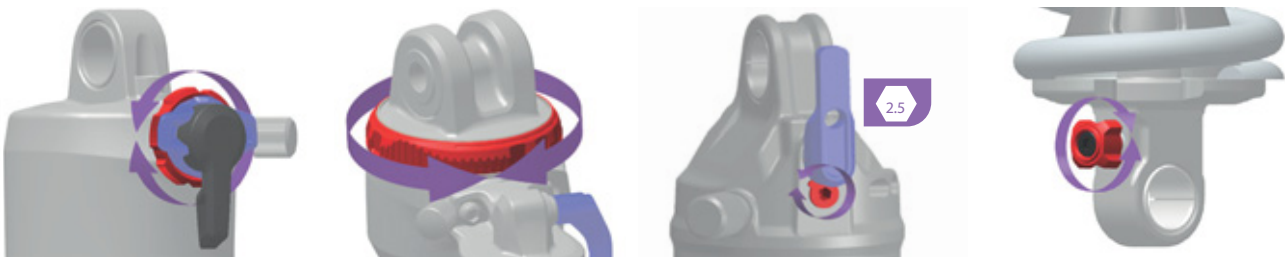


Figure 108: Position and shape of the rebound adjuster (red) depends on the model

- ✓ The sag in the rear frame damper is adjusted.
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster** clockwise.
- ⇒ The rebound damping is increased.
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The rebound damping is reduced.



### 6.6.16 Compression adjuster on rear frame damper

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The saddle rises slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).

#### Compression adjuster set to hard

- Allows the rear frame damper to move higher in the deflection range. This makes it easier to improve efficiency and maintain momentum when pedalling or riding over uniformly hilly terrain and around bends.
- Deflection feels somewhat harder on bumpy terrain.

#### Compression adjuster set to soft

- Allows the damper to deflect quickly and easily. This makes it easier to maintain speed and momentum when riding over bumpy terrain.
- Deflection feels somewhat less hard on bumpy terrain.



Figure 109: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance over bumps

#### Threshold

The damping threshold prevents deflection until a medium impact or downward force occurs. Threshold mode increases drive efficiency over level terrain.

The threshold setting can be used to improve pedalling efficiency over flat, hilly, level or slightly rugged terrain. In threshold mode, higher pedelec speeds lead to greater impact force when a pedelec hits a bump, causing the fork to deflect, and the bump is absorbed.

- When the compression adjuster is in the open position, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered through its entire deflection range.
- When the compression adjuster is in the threshold position, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection until a medium impact or downward force occurs.
- When the compression adjuster is in the blocked position, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection throughout its deflection range until a strong impact or downward force occurs.

### 6.6.16.1 Adjusting the RockShox compression adjuster

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

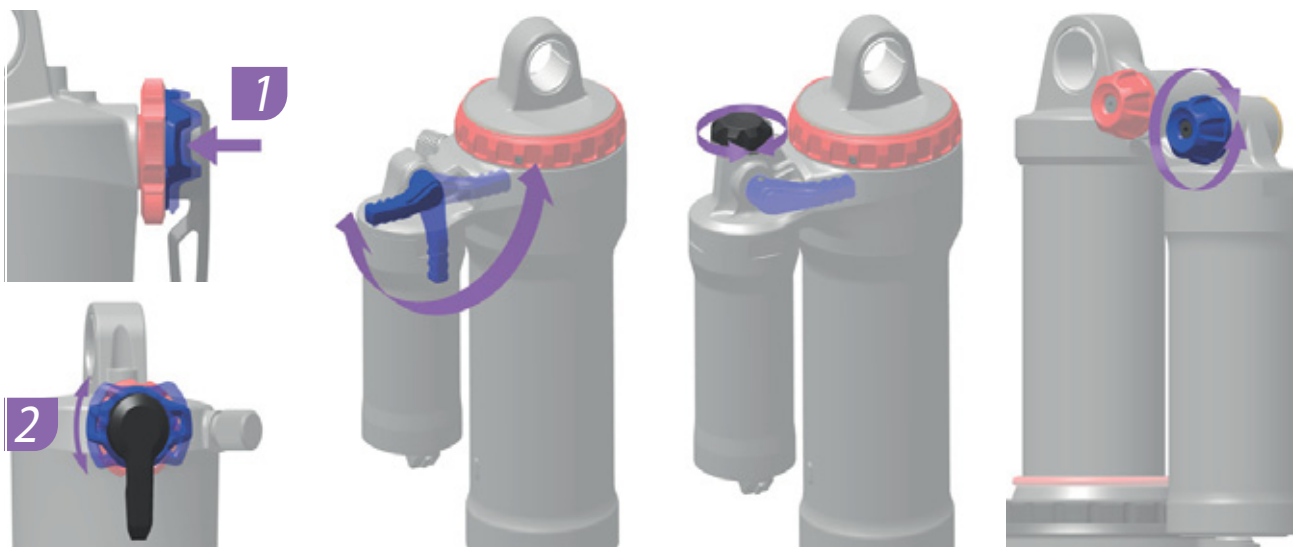


Figure 110: Position and shape of the compression adjuster (blue) depends on the model

- 1 Set the **compression adjuster** to the middle position.
- 2 Ride the pedelec over a small obstacle.
  - ▶ Turn **compression adjuster** clockwise.
    - ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is increased. The deflection stroke speed is reduced.
  - ▶ Turn **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.
    - ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is reduced. The deflection stroke speed is increased.
- 3 The ideal setting for the rebound damper has been achieved when the rebound movement of the rear wheel feels comparable to that of the front wheel.

## 6.6.17 Lighting

### Example 1

If the front light is positioned too high, oncoming traffic will be dazzled. This can cause a serious accident with fatalities.

### Example 2

Positioning the front light correctly can ensure that oncoming traffic is not dazzled and no-one is put at risk.

### Example 3

If the front light is positioned too low, the space ahead is not illuminated to an optimum extent and the rider's vision is reduced in the dark.

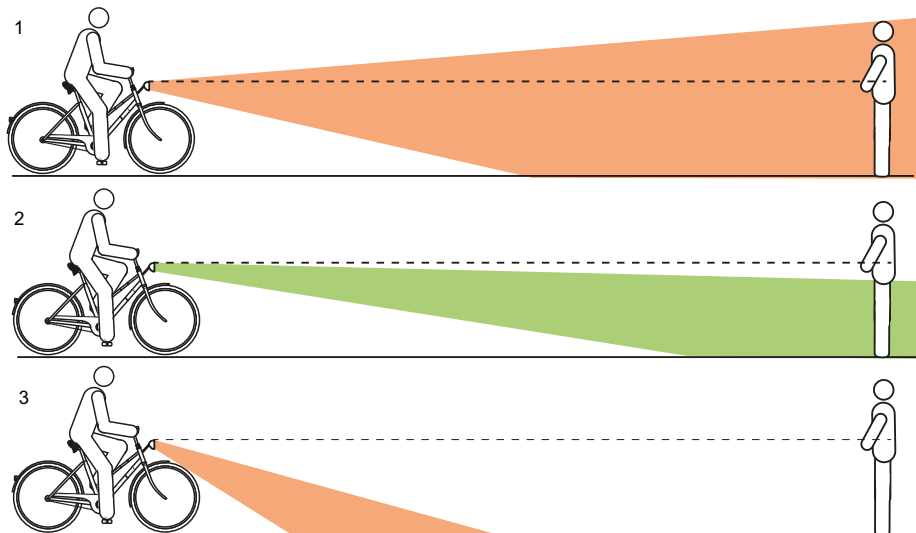


Figure 111: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

### 6.6.17.1 Adjusting the lights

- 1 Position the pedelec so that its front is facing a wall.
- 2 Mark the height of the front light (1) on the wall with chalk.
- 3 Mark half the height of the front light (2) on the wall with chalk.

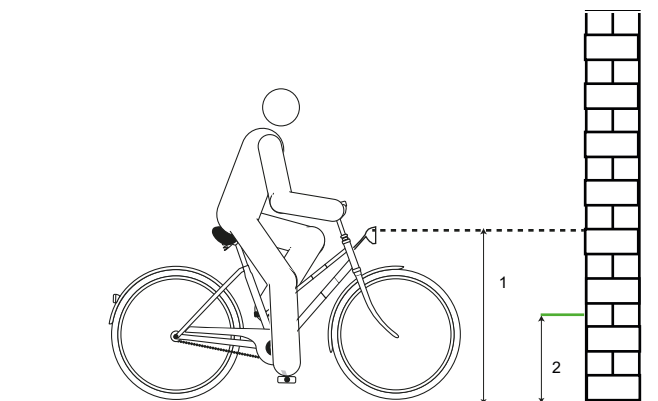


Figure 112: Front light height (1) and half the headlight height (2)

- 4 Place pedelec 5 m from the wall. 6 Switch on riding light.
- 5 Stand the pedelec up straight. Hold the handlebars straight with both hands. Do not use the kickstand.

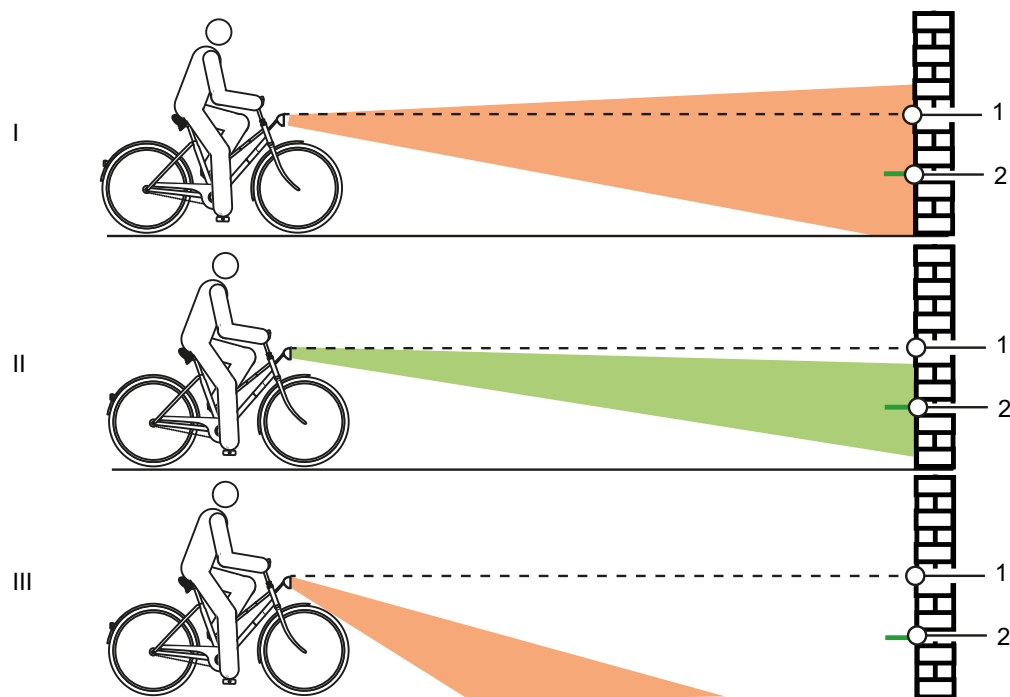


Figure 113: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

7 Check the position of the light beam.

- ▶ (I) If the upper edge of the light beam is above the front light height mark (1), the light will dazzle. The front light must be positioned lower.
- ▶ (II) If the mid-point of the light beam is on or slightly below the mark showing half the front light (2), the light is optimally positioned.
- ▶ (III) If the light beam is in front of the wall, move front light up.

## 6.6.18 Adjust on-board computer

### CAUTION

#### Crash caused by distraction

A lack of concentration while riding increases the risk of an accident. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow yourself to be distracted by the on-board computer.
- ▶ Stop pedelec if you want to make inputs on the on-board computer other than change the level of assistance. Only enter data when the bicycle is stationary.

### Notice

- ▶ Do not use on-board computer as a handle. The on-board computer may become irreparably damaged if you use it to lift the pedelec.

The pedelec is operated using the on-board computer (II) and the left-hand control panel (I).

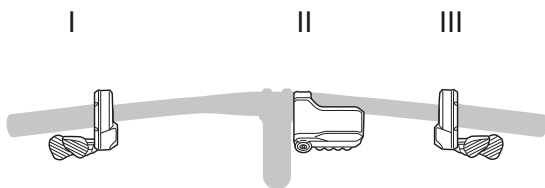


Figure 114: Overview of control panel position

There can be three different control panels:

- 3-switch control panel
- 2-switch control panel
- MTB control panel.

### 3-switch control panel

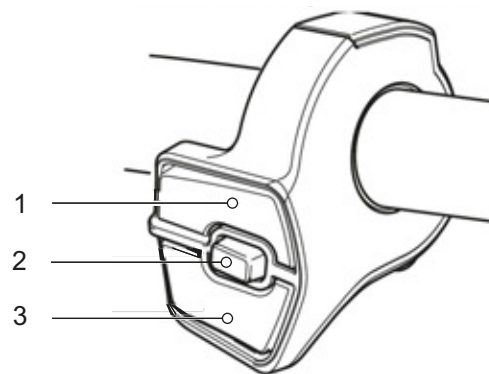


Figure 115: 3-switch control panel

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1 | Switch X |
| 2 | Switch A |
| 3 | Switch Y |

### 2-switch control panel

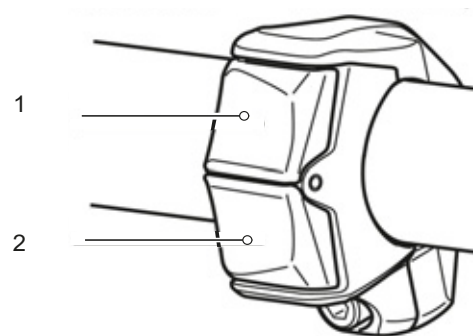


Figure 116: 2-switch control panel

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1 | Switch X |
| 2 | Switch Y |

### MTB control panel

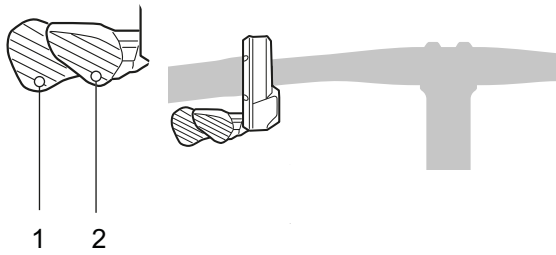


Figure 117: MTB control panel

- 1 Switch Y
- 2 Switch X

The *on-board computer* has one button (1) and a display screen (2).

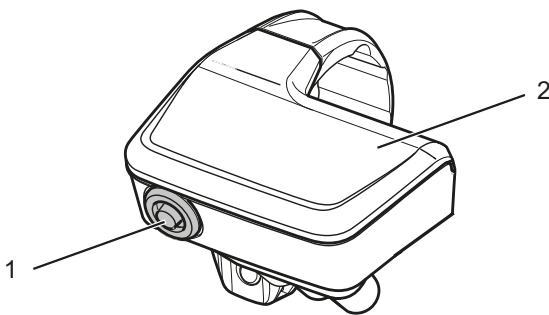


Figure 118: SC-EM800 on-board computer details

Switch	Function
WHEN RIDING	
BUTTON	Switch journey data displayed
WHEN SETTING	
	Change display or confirm setting change

### Control panel on the right side of the handlebars

Switch	Function
WHEN RIDING	
X	Change up
Y	Change down
A*	Switch between automatic and manual Gear shift

### Control panel on the left side of the handlebars

Switch	Function
WHEN RIDING	
X	Increase level of assistance
Y	Reduce level of assistance
A*	Switch journey data displayed
WHEN ADJUSTING	
X	Move cursor or change the settings
Y	Move cursor or change the settings
A*	Change display or confirm setting change

\* If there is no switch A on the control panel, the button on the on-board computer will control these functions.

#### 6.6.19 Opening the settings menu

- ✓ You can only change the settings when you stop.
- ✓ The main display screen appears.

**1** Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The settings menu is displayed.



Figure 119: Opening the settings menu

### Settings menu structure

→ CLEAR	Clears the settings
→ CLOCK	Adjusting the clock
→ BRIGHTNESS	Adjusts display screen brightness
→ BEEP	Switches the beep on and off
→ UNIT	Adjusts trip distance unit: km/h or m.p.h.
→ LANGUAGE	Sets the language
→ DISPLAY SPEED	Adjusts the displayed speed
→ LIGHT	Light is automatically switched on or off when system is started up.
→ START MODE	Adjusts the gear level when setting off.
→ ADJUST LEVEL OF ASSIST.	Adjusts levels of assistance
→ GEAR SETTING	Activates the RD protection reset
→ EXIT	Returns to the main screen

### 6.6.20 Closing the settings menu

- 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until EXIT is selected.
  - 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The main display screen appears.

#### 6.6.20.1 Sets the language

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until LANGUAGE is highlighted
  - 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ There are six options:

Language
ENGLISH
FRANÇAIS
DEUTSCH
NEDERLANDS
ITALIANO
ESPAÑOL

Table 39: Language change options

- 3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired language is highlighted.
  - 4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The language has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

#### 6.6.20.2 Setting units

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until BRIGHTNESS is highlighted.
  - 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
KM	Unit in km.
MILE	Unit in miles

Table 40: Units change options

- 3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.
  - 4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The unit has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

#### 6.6.20.3 Changing the displayed speed

If there is a difference between the speed displayed on this product and the speed displayed on another device, the displayed value can be changed. This adjustment does not affect the motor's maximum speed of 25 km/h.

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until DISPLAY SPEED is highlighted.
  - 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The speed settings menu appears.

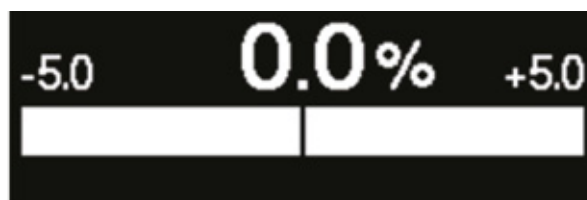


Figure 120: Speed settings menu

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
Increase value	Increases the displayed speed value.
Reduce value	Reduces the displayed speed value.

Table 41: Speed change options

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the change is highlighted.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The displayed speed is changed. The settings menu is displayed.

#### 6.6.20.4 Adjusting the clock

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until CLOCK is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The clock settings menu appears. The hour indicator is highlighted.

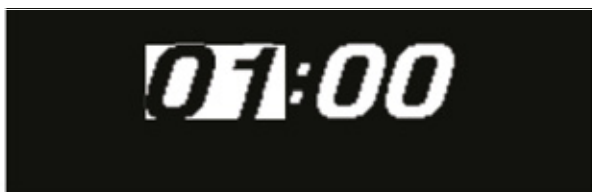


Figure 121: Clock settings menu

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** repeatedly until the correct hour is displayed. Press and hold **switch X** or **switch Y** to change the values quickly.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The minute indicator is highlighted.

5 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** repeatedly until the correct minutes value is displayed. Press and hold **switch X** or **switch Y** to change the values quickly.

▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The clock has been set. The settings menu is displayed.

#### 6.6.20.5 Changing the brightness

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until BRIGHTNESS is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The brightness settings menu appears.



Figure 122: Brightness settings menu

⇒ Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired brightness is highlighted.

3 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The brightness has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

#### 6.6.20.6 Changing the beep sound

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until SIGNAL is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
ON	Beep sound always on.
OFF	Beep sound always off.

Table 42: Beep sound change options

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The beep sound has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.



### 6.6.20.7 Automatic light setting

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until START MODE is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
ON	The light is always on when the system is switched on.
OFF	The light is always off when the system is switched on.

Table 43: Options to change the automatic light setting

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The light setting has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

### 6.6.20.8 Adjusting the start gear

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

✓ It is only possible to adjust the gear shift if using an electronic gear shift.

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until LIGHT is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The start gear settings menu appears.

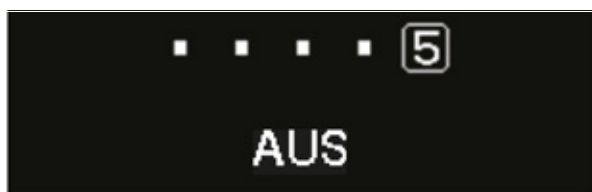


Figure 123: Start gear settings menu

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
[1], [2], ...	Select start gear *3
OFF	No start gear.

Table 44: Options to change the start gear



\*3 Your specialist dealer can adjust a start gear up to the maximum gear level on the gear shift mounted on the pedelec.

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The start gear has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

### 6.6.20.9 Changing level of assistance

The ride comfort of the pedelec depends on the maximum torque of the drive unit and how much drive force is applied when pedalling. The Shimano drive system has several recommended, registered settings that can be changed as desired. The settings can be adjusted to individual requirements. Depending on the setting, the battery consumption may increase and the supported travel range may be considerably reduced.

Details of the settings can be read in E-TUBE PROJECT. For details, see the service instructions in E-TUBE PROJECT.

✓ The *settings menu* is opened.

1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until ADJUST LEVEL OF ASSIST. is highlighted.

2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The level of assistance settings menu appears. There are two selection options:

Display	Function
PROFILE 1	Change the level of assistance using the values stored in Profile 1.
PROFILE 2	Change the level of assistance using the values stored in Profile 2.

Table 45: Options to change level of assistance

3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.

4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ The levels of assistance have been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

### 6.6.20.10 Adjusts the gear shift

#### Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ It is only possible to adjust the gear shift if using an electronic gear shift.
  - ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
  - 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until LIGHT is highlighted.
  - 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The gear shift settings menu appears.



Figure 124: Gear shift settings menu

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
Increase value	Increases value when pedalling is too difficult.
Reduce value	Reduces value when pedalling is too difficult.

Table 46: Options to change the gear shift

- 3 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.
  - 4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The gear shift setting has been changed. The settings menu is displayed.

### 6.6.20.11 RD protection reset

#### Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ It is only possible to perform the RD protection reset shift if using an electronic gear shift.

The RD protection function will immediately trigger to protect the system if the pedelec is exposed to a severe impact – due to a fall, for example. The connection between the motor and the link is interrupted instantly, rendering the rear derailleur inoperable.

If you open RD PROTECTION RESET, the connection between the motor and link is re-established and the rear derailleur function reset.

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- 1 Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until RD PROTECTION RESET is highlighted.
- 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.

⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
OK	RD protection reset is carried out
CANCEL	Return to the settings menu

Table 47: Options to change the gear shift

- 3 Hold **switch X** or **switch Y** until the desired function is highlighted.
  - 4 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
  - 5 Turn the crank clockwise with the rear wheel raised.
- ⇒ The rear derailleur moves and the connection between the motor and link is re-established. The settings menu is displayed.

### 6.6.20.12 Deleting all saved values

The saved DST value (distance travelled) can be cleared together with TIME (trip time), AVG (average speed) and MAX (maximum speed). There are two ways to do this.

#### Deleting values in the settings menu

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- ▶ Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until CLEAR is selected.
- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ There are two selection options:
 

EXIT	Returns to the menu list display screen
DST	Clears the journey information
- ▶ Press **switch X** or **switch Y** until DST is highlighted.
- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A**.
- ⇒ The data have been cleared. The settings menu is displayed.

#### Clearing values in the DST display

- ✓ The main display screen opens.
- 1 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A** repeatedly until DST is displayed.



Figure 125: DST is displayed

- 2 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A** until the displayed distance travelled starts flashing.
- 3 Press the **button (display)** or **switch A** within the next 5 seconds.
- ⇒ DST (distance travelled), TIME (trip time), AVG (average speed) and MAX (maximum speed) are reset to zero.
- ⇒ If no button or switch is pressed within 5 seconds, the main display screen appears.

### 6.6.21 Connecting an external device

#### 6.6.21.1 Connecting device via the ANT

- 1 Switch on the drive system.
  - 2 Switch the external device to connection mode. Please follow the operating instructions for the external device.
- ⇒ The devices are connected.

#### 6.6.21.2 Connecting the device via Bluetooth® LE

- 1 Switch the external device to connection mode. Please follow the operating instructions for the external device.
- 2 Switch on the drive system.
- 3 A connection is established within 30 seconds of switching on and within 30 seconds of pressing any button or switch (except the **On-Off button**).

## 6.7 Connect external devices

### Notice

- ▶ Do not establish connection to external devices if the battery is charging.

### 6.7.1 Connect via Bluetooth® LE

- ✓ The external device supports Bluetooth® LE connections.
- 1 Switch the external device to connection mode. Follow the operating instructions for the external device when doing so.
- ▶ Drive system will start within 30 seconds of the external device being placed in pairing mode, or
- ▶ Press any button within 30 seconds of the external device being placed in pairing mode.
- 2 Establish connection
- ⇒ The connection is established.

### 6.7.2 Connect via ANT

- ✓ The external device supports ANT connections.
- 1 Switch the external device to connection mode. Follow the operating instructions for the external device when doing so.
- 2 Switch on the drive system.
- 3 Establish connection.
- ⇒ The connection is established.

## 6.8 Using E-TUBE PROJECT

E-TUBE PROJECT is required to change drive system settings and update firmware.

The functions that can be configured differ depending on the pedelec. You will find details in the E-TUBE PROJECT operating instructions.

- Functions allocated to each operating switch can be changed.
- The pedelec's settings can also be configured using E-TUBE PROJECT.
- Settings for ride comfort can be saved and registered in E-TUBE PROJECT; see “Dynamic change to ride characteristics [Sup. adjust.]” in the E-TUBE PROJECT operating instructions.

You will find information on installing E-TUBE PROJECT on the support website.

- ▶ Download E-TUBE PROJECT onto the connected external device from the SHIMANO support website:  
<https://e-tubeproject.shimano.com>.

## 6.9 Accessories

We recommend a parking stand into which either the front wheel or rear wheel can be inserted securely for pedelecs which do not have a kickstand. The following accessories are recommended:

Description	Article number
Protective cover for electrical components	080-41000 ff
Panniers, system component*	080-40946
Rear wheel basket, system component*	051-20603
Bicycle box, system component*	080-40947
Parking stand universal stand	XX-TWO14B

**Table 48: Accessories**

### 6.9.1 Child seat



**WARNING**

#### Crash caused by incorrect child seat

The pannier rack and down tube are unsuitable for mounting child seats and may break. Such an incorrect position may cause a crash with serious injuries for the rider or child.

- ▶ Never attach a child seat to the saddle, handlebars or down tube.



**CAUTION**

#### Crash caused by improper handling

When using child seats, the pedelec's handling characteristics and stability change considerably. This can cause a loss of control, a crash and injuries.

- ▶ You should practice how to use the child seat safely before using the pedelec in public spaces.



**CAUTION**

#### Risk of crushing due to exposed springs

The child may crush his/her fingers on exposed springs or open mechanical parts of the saddle or the seat post.

- ▶ Never install saddles with exposed springs if a child seat is being used.
- ▶ Never install seat posts with suspension with open mechanical parts or exposed springs if a child seat is being used.

### Notice

- ▶ Observe the legal regulations on the use of child seats.
- ▶ Observe the operating and safety instructions for the child seat system.
- ▶ Never exceed the maximum permitted total weight.

The specialist dealer will advise you on choosing a suitable child seat system for the child and the pedelec.

The specialist dealer must install the child seat the first time to ensure that it is safely fitted.

When installing a child seat, the specialist dealer makes sure that the seat and the fastening mechanism for the seat are suitable for the pedelec and that all components are installed and firmly fastened. They will also ensure that shift cables, brake cables, hydraulic lines and electrical cables are adjusted as necessary, the rider has optimum freedom of movement and the pedelec's maximum permitted total weight is complied with.

The specialist dealer will provide instruction on how to handle the pedelec and the child seat.

## 6.9.2 Trailer



### Crash caused by brake failure

The braking distance may be longer if the trailer is carrying excessive load. The long braking distance can cause a crash or an accident and injuries.

- ▶ Never exceed the specified trailer load.

### Notice

- ▶ The *operating* and safety instructions for the trailer system must be observed.
- ▶ The statutory regulations on the use of bicycle trailers must be observed.
- ▶ Only use type-approved coupling systems.

A pedelec which is approved for towing a trailer will bear an appropriate adhesive label. You may only use trailers with a tongue load and weight which do not exceed the permitted values.

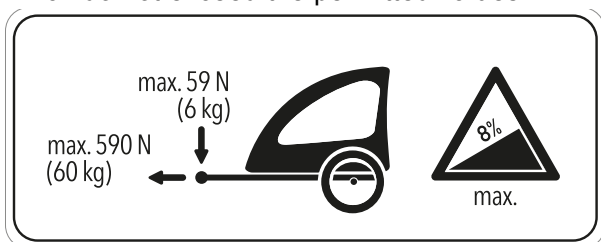


Figure 126: Trailer sign

The specialist dealer will advise on choosing a suitable trailer system for the pedelec. The specialist dealer must install the trailer the first time to ensure that it is fitted safely.

### 6.9.2.1 Approval for trailer with Enviolo hub

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Only compatible bicycle trailers are approved for ENVIOLLO hub gears.

#### KETTLER

KETTLER QUADRIGA child trailer.

#### BURLY

Trailer	Adapter
Minnow Bee	Item no. 960038
Honey Bee	
Encore	
solo	
Cub	
D'Lite	
Normad	
Flatbed	
Tail Wagon	

#### CROOZER

Trailer	Adapter
Croozor Kid	Item no. 122003516, XL: +10 mm Item no. 122003716 Item no. 12200715 Croozor axle nut adapter with Thule coupling
Croozor Kid Plus	
Croozor Cargo	
Croozor Dog	

#### THULE

Trailer	Adapter
Thule Chariot Lite	Item no. 20100798
Thule Chariot Cab	
Thule Chariot Cross	
Thule Chariot Sport	
Thule Coaster XT	

### 6.9.2.2 Approval for trailer with ROHLOFF hub

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

#### ROHLOFF Speedhub 500/14

As a basic rule, it is permitted to use a trailer in combination with the ROHLOFF SPEEDHUB 500/14.

There must be **no component contact** with the cover of the ROHLOFF E-14 gear shift unit caused by pressure or tension at any time during assembly or when riding with the trailer **under any circumstances**.

Collision causing possible damage to the ROHLOFF E-14 gear shift unit can be avoided with suitable washers or special axle adapters (spacers or polygon) from the coupling manufacturer concerned.

#### Speedhub with A-12



#### Risk of an accident

The A-12 attachment screw has a very low screw-in depth. The screw or the thread in the axle plate can be damaged or ripped out if a trailer hitch is fitted directly onto the axle or the A-12 attachment screw. This may cause an accident with injuries.

- ▶ Never fit a trailer hitch directly on the axle and the A-12 attachment screw to a ROHLOFF Speedhub with an A-12 axle system in a 12 mm quick release axle frame.

### 6.9.3 Mobile holder

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

A holder for SP Connect mobile case is fitted to the stem.

- ✓ Observe the operating instructions for the mobile and the SP Connect mobile case.
- ✓ Use on tarmacked roads only.
- ✓ Protect mobile from theft.
- ▶ To attach: insert the SP Connect mobile case in the holder and turn 90° to the right.
- ▶ To release: turn the SP Connect mobile case 90° to the left and remove.

### 6.9.4 Tubeless and airless tyres

Bicycle riding without tubes reduces the risk of tyre punctures or even avoids them completely.

The specialist dealer will advise on choosing a suitable tyre system for the pedelec.

A specialist dealer must carry out conversion to tubeless or airless tyres for safety reasons.

### 6.9.5 Suspension fork coil spring

If the desired suspension fork sag cannot be achieved after adjustment, the coil spring assembly must be replaced with a softer or harder spring.

- ▶ Fit a softer coil spring assembly group to increase the sag.
- ▶ Fit a harder coil spring assembly group to decrease the sag.

### 6.9.6 Pannier rack

The specialist dealer will advise on choosing a suitable pannier rack.

The specialist dealer must install the pannier rack the first time to ensure that it is safely fitted.

When installing a pannier rack, the specialist dealer makes sure that the fastening mechanism is suitable for the pedelec and that all components are installed and firmly fastened. They will also ensure that shift cables, brake cables, hydraulic lines and electrical cables are adjusted as necessary, the rider has optimum freedom of movement and the pedelec's maximum permitted total weight is not exceeded.

The specialist dealer will provide instruction on how to handle the pedelec and the pannier rack.

### 6.9.7 Panniers and cargo boxes

- ▶ Use a paint protection film when attaching panniers. This will reduce abrasion on paint and wear on components.

## 6.10 Personal protective equipment and accessories for road safety

Seeing and being seen is crucial in road traffic. The following requirements must be met for riding a road-safe vehicle on public roads.

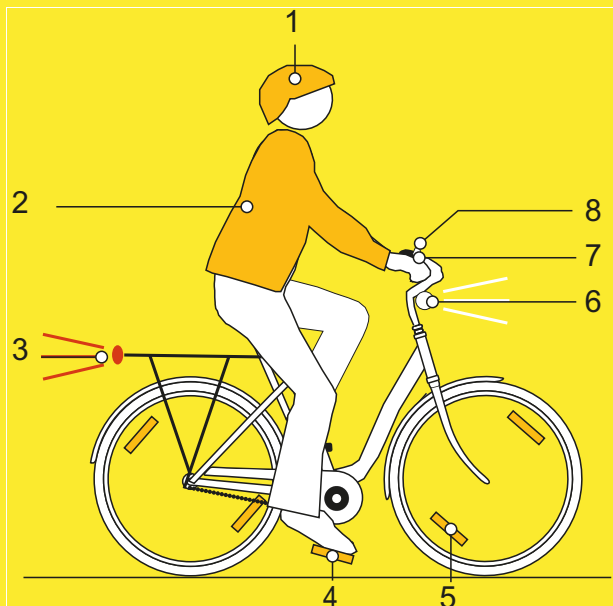


Figure 127: Road safety

- 1 The helmet must have a reflective strip or a light in a clearly visible colour.
- 2 **Cycle clothing** is essential at all times of year. Clothing should be retroreflective or as light as possible. Fluorescent materials are also suitable. High-visibility jackets and straps on your upper body ensure even greater safety. Never wear a skirt. Always wear trousers which reach down to your ankles instead.
- 3 The **large red reflector** with a “Z” registration mark and the **red rear light** must be clean. The rear light is attached high enough so that cars can see it (minimum height 25 cm). The rear light must work.
- 4 The two **reflectors on the two non-slip pedals** must be clean.
- 5 The **yellow spoke reflectors** on both wheels or the **white, fluorescent surface** on both wheels must be clean.
- 6 The **white front light** must work and must be positioned so that it does not dazzle other road users. If the **white reflector** is not integrated into the front light, it must be clean at all times.

- 7 The **two separate brakes** on the pedelec must work at all times.
- 8 The **clear sounding bell** must be fitted and must work.

## 6.11 Before each ride

- ▶ Check pedelec before each ride; see [section 7.1](#).

Check list before each ride		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check everything is sufficiently clean.	See <a href="#">section 7.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place.	See <a href="#">section 6.7.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check lights.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.14</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check suspension seat post.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pannier rack.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check bell.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.10</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handles.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.11</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rear frame damper.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check frame.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel concentricity.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check quick releases.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.8</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check mudguards.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check USB cover.	See <a href="#">section 7.1.12</a>

- ▶ Be alert to any unusual noises, vibrations or odours while riding. Be alert to any unusual operating sensations when braking, pedalling or steering. This indicates material fatigue.
- ⇒ Take pedelec out of service if there are any deviations from the “Before each ride” check list or any unusual behaviour. Contact your specialist dealer.



## 6.12 Straightening the quickly adjustable stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Open stem clamping lever.

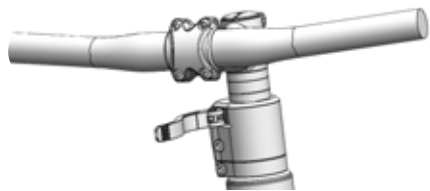


Figure 128: Example of All Up with open stem clamping lever

- 2 Pull handlebars into the highest possible position.

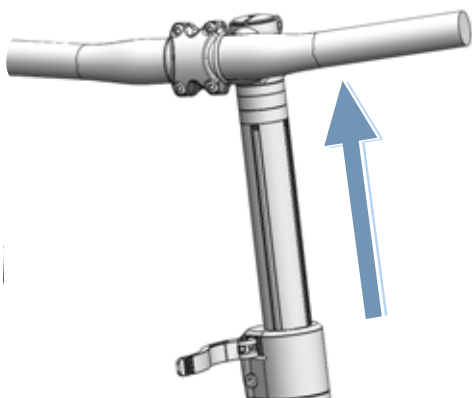


Figure 129: Example of All Up pulled into highest possible position

- 3 Turn handlebars 90° anti-clockwise so that they are straight.

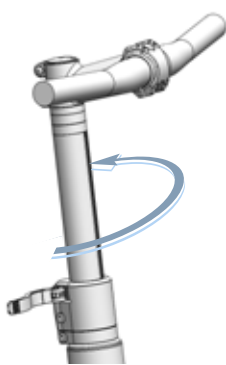


Figure 130: Example of All Up in straight position

- 4 Place handlebars at required height
- 5 Close stem clamping lever.

## 6.13 Using the pannier rack



### Crash caused by loaded pannier rack

The pedelec is handled differently with a loaded *pannier rack*, in particular when the rider needs to steer and brake. This can lead to a loss of control. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ You should practice how to use a loaded *pannier rack* safely before using the pedelec in public spaces.

### Crushing the fingers in the spring flap

The spring flap on the *pannier rack* operates with a high clamping force. There is a risk of crushing the fingers.

- ▶ Never allow the spring flap to snap shut in an uncontrolled manner.
- ▶ Be careful where you position your fingers when closing the spring flap.

### Crash caused by unsecured baggage

Loose or unsecured objects on the *pannier rack*, e.g. belts, may become caught in the rear wheel. This may cause a crash with injuries.

Objects which are fastened to the *pannier rack* may cover the *reflectors* and the *riding light*. Other users may not see the pedelec on public roads as a result. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Secure any objects which are attached to the *pannier rack* sufficiently.
- ▶ Objects fastened to the *pannier rack* must never cover the *reflectors*, the *front lamp* or the *rear light*.

- ▶ Distribute the baggage as evenly as possible between the left- and right-hand side.
- ▶ We recommend the use of panniers and baggage baskets.



Figure 131: The maximum load bearing (1) capacity is indicated on the pannier rack.

- ▶ Never exceed the maximum permitted *total weight* when packing the pannier.
- ▶ Never (1) exceed the maximum load bearing capacity of the pannier rack.
- ▶ Never modify the pannier rack.

## 6.14 Raising the kickstand

- ▶ Use your foot to raise kickstand completely before setting off.

## 6.15 Using the saddle

- ▶ Do not wear studded jeans as these can damage the saddle covering.
- ▶ Wear dark clothes for your first few rides as new leather saddles can stain clothing.

### 6.15.1 Using the leather saddle

Sunlight and UV light damage the colour and can cause the leather to dry out and fade.

- ▶ Do not expose the pedelec to the sun for longer periods of time.

Moisture may cause the leather to detach from material beneath and mould can form.

- ▶ If the leather handles get wet, dry handles completely.

## 6.16 Using the pedals

- ▶ The ball of the foot is placed on the pedal when riding and pedalling.



Figure 132: Correct (1) and incorrect (2) foot position on the pedal

## 6.17 Using the multifunctional handlebars or bar ends

- ▶ Vary handle position to avoid overstraining and tiring the hands.

### 6.17.1 Using leather handles

Sweat and grease from the skin are two of the greatest enemies of leather. They penetrate the surface of leather and cause it to disintegrate more quickly, meaning the leather can soften and abrade.

- ▶ Wear gloves.

Sunlight and UV light damage the colour and can cause the leather to dry out and fade.

- ▶ Do not expose the pedelec to the sun for longer periods of time.

Moisture may cause the leather to detach from material beneath and mould can form.

- ▶ If the leather handles get wet, dry handles completely.

## 6.18 Using the bell

- 1 Press the bell button downwards.
- 2 Let button spring back.

## 6.19 Rechargeable battery

- ✓ Switch off the battery and the drive system before removing or inserting the battery.

### 6.19.0.1 Removing the battery

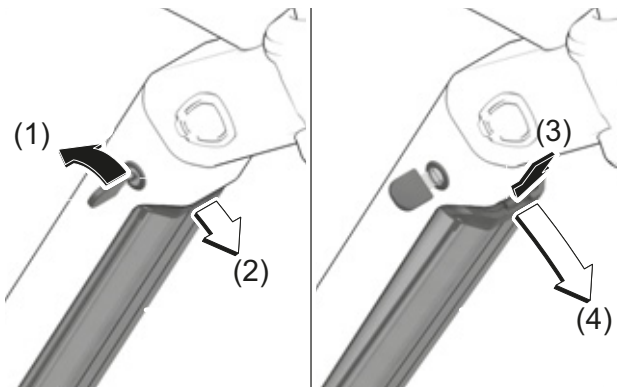


Figure 133: Removing the battery

- 1 Open battery lock with battery key (1).
  - ⇒ The battery is released and falls into the retainer guard (2).
- 2 Hold the battery in your hand from below. Use the other hand to push on the retainer guard from above (3).
  - ⇒ The battery is released and falls into the hand (4).
- 3 Remove the battery from the frame.
- 4 Remove the battery key from the battery lock.

### 6.19.0.2 Inserting the battery

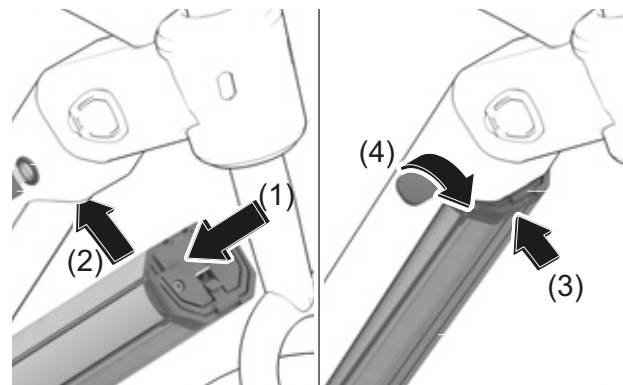


Figure 134: Inserting the battery

- 1 Place the battery into the battery lower mount with the contacts facing the front (1).
- 2 Flip the battery upwards so that the battery is held by the retainer guard (2).
- 3 Push the battery upwards (3).
  - ⇒ There is an audible clicking noise.
- 4 Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place.
- 5 Lock the battery with the battery key; otherwise, the battery may fall out of the mount when you open the see (4).
- 6 Remove the battery key from the battery lock.
- 7 Check the battery to ensure it is firmly in place before each ride.

### 6.19.1 Charging the battery

- ✓ The ambient temperature during the charging process must be within the range from 0 °C to 40 °C.
  - ✓ The battery can remain on the pedelec or can be removed for charging.
  - ✓ Interrupting the charging process does not damage the battery.
- 1 Remove the cable connection cover if necessary.
  - 2 Connect the mains plug of the charger to a normal domestic, grounded socket.

Connection data	230 V, 50 Hz
-----------------	--------------

#### Notice

- ▶ Check that mains voltage! The power source voltage must match the voltage indicated on the charger nameplate. Chargers labelled 230 V may be operated at 220 V.

- 3 Connect the charging cable to the battery's charging port.
- ⇒ The charging process starts automatically.  
The Charge Level (battery) indicator shows the battery level during charging.

Selection	Description
At rest	Green, flashing rapidly (2 x a second)
Charging	Red I
Charging complete	Green
Fault	Red, flashing (1 x a second)

- ⇒ When the drive system is switched on, the *display screen* shows the charging process.
- 4 The charging process is complete when the LEDs on the battery level indicator turn green.
  - 5 Disconnect the battery from the charger.
  - 6 Disconnect the charger from the mains.

## 6.20 Using pedelec with the electric drive system

### 6.20.1 Switching on the electric drive system



#### Crash caused by lack of readiness for braking

When it is switched on, the drive system can be activated by the application of force on the pedals. There is a risk of a crash if the drive is activated unintentionally and the brake is not reached.

- ▶ Never start the electric drive system, or switch it off immediately, if the brake cannot be reached safely and reliably.

- 
- ✓ A sufficiently charged battery has been inserted into the pedelec.
  - ✓ Never place your feet on the pedals when switching on. If the pedals are moved when switching on, a system error is caused.
  - ✓ The battery is firmly in place. The key has been removed.
  - ✓ The system cannot be switched on while charging.
  - ▶ Press **On-Off button (battery)**.
  - ⇒ The LED light will light up and indicate the remaining battery capacity.
  - ⇒ If the drive system is switched on, the drive is activated as soon as the pedals are moved with sufficient force.

### 6.20.2 Switching off the electric drive system

The system switches off automatically ten minutes after the last command.

The drive system can also be switched off on the battery.

- ▶ Press **On-Off button (battery)** for 6 seconds.

## 6.21 Using the on-board computer

### CAUTION

#### Crash caused by distraction

A lack of concentration while riding increases the risk of an accident. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow yourself to be distracted by the on-board computer.
- ▶ Stop the pedelec if you want to make inputs on the on-board computer other than change the level of assistance. Only enter data when the bicycle is stationary.

### Notice

- ▶ Do not use on-board computer as a handle. The on-board computer may become irreparably damaged if you use it to lift the pedelec.

The pedelec is operated using the on-board computer (II) and the left-hand control panel (I).

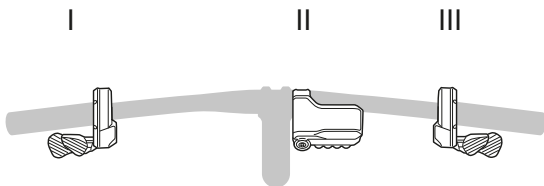


Figure 135: Overview of control panel position

There can be three different control panels:

- 3-switch control panel
- 2-switch control panel
- MTB control panel.

#### 3-switch control panel

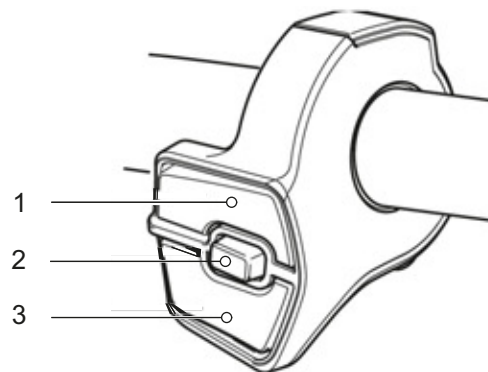


Figure 136: Overview of 3-switch control panel

- 1 Switch X
- 2 Switch A
- 3 Switch Y

#### 2-switch control panel

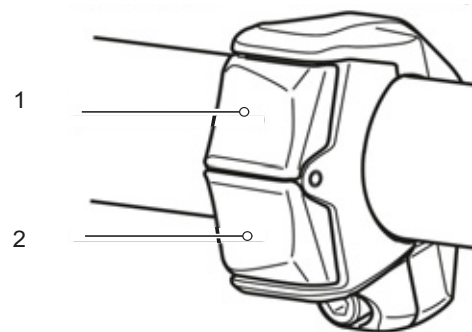


Figure 137: 2-switch control panel

- 1 Switch X
- 2 Switch Y

### MTB control panel

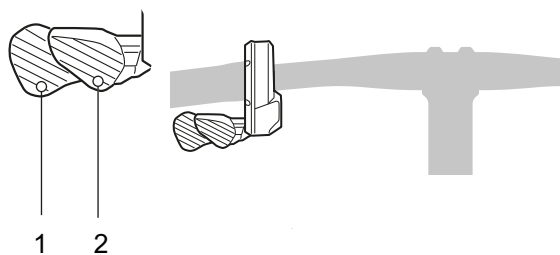


Figure 138: MTB control panel

- 1 Switch Y
- 2 Switch X

#### Control panel on the right side of the handlebars

Switch	Function
<b>WHEN RIDING</b>	
X	Change up
Y	Change down
A	Switch between automatic and manual Gear shift

#### Control panel on the left side of the handlebars

Switch	Function
<b>WHEN RIDING</b>	
X	Increase level of assistance
Y	Reduce level of assistance
A	Switch journey data displayed
<b>WHEN ADJUSTING</b>	
X	Move cursor or change the settings
Y	Move cursor or change the settings
A	Change display or confirm setting change

If there is no switch A on the control panel, the button on the on-board computer will assume these functions.

The *on-board computer* has one button (1) and a display screen (2).

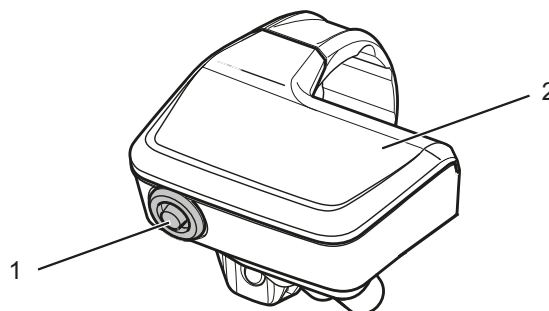


Figure 139: SC-EM800 on-board computer details

Switch	Function
<b>WHEN RIDING</b>	
BUTTON	Switch journey data displayed
<b>WHEN SETTING</b>	
	Change display or confirm setting change

#### 6.21.1 Using the riding light

- ▶ The riding light is either constantly on or constantly off. The setting is changed in the system settings.

#### 6.21.2 Selecting the level of assistance

The following levels of assistance are available:

Display	Details
BOOST	High level of assistance.
TRAIL	Normal assistance
ECO	Low level of assistance
OFF	Assistance off
WALK	Activated push assist

Table 49: Overview of level of assistance

- ▶ Press **switch Y (left)** once to increase the level of assistance.
- ▶ Press **switch X (left)** to reduce the level of assistance.

### 6.21.3 Using the push assist system



#### Injury caused by pedals

The pedals turn when using the push assist due to the system design.

- ▶ You must steer the pedelec securely with both hands when using push assist.
- ▶ Allow for enough freedom of movement for the pedals.

The push assist helps move the pedelec. The speed can be a maximum of 6 km/h in this case. The tractive power of the push assist and its speed can be influenced by the selection of gear. We recommend using first gear for cycling uphill to protect the drive.

#### 6.21.3.1 Select WALK level of assistance

- ▶ Press and hold **switch Y (left)**.
  - ⇒ The level of assistance WALK is displayed.
  - ⇒ If a warning is sounded during switchover, it is impossible to switch to the WALK level of assistance. This may be due to the current speed not being 0 km/h, pressure being applied to the pedals or similar.
- ▶ Release **switch Y (left)**.

#### 6.21.3.2 Switching on the push assist

- ▶ Press **switch Y (left)** to switch on push assist.

#### 6.21.3.3 Switching off the push assist

- ▶ Release **switch Y (left)** to switch off push assist.

#### 6.21.3.4 Exit WALK level of assistance

- ▶ Push **switch X (left)** to change from the WALK level of assistance to the level of assistance last used. If **switch Y (left)** is not pushed for longer than one minute, the level of assistance is reset to the level of assistance used previously.

### 6.21.4 Switching the journey information

The displayed journey information can be switched.



Figure 140: Changing from main display screen to DST display, example

- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A** until the required *journey information* is displayed. The sequence is as follows:

Display	Function
–	The current speed is displayed on the main display screen
DST	Distance travelled since the last reset
ODO	Display of the total distance travelled (cannot be changed)
RANGE	Estimated range of the available battery charge *1
TIME	Trip time *2
AVG	Average speed *2
MAX	Maximum achieved speed *2
CADENCE	Number of crank revolutions per minute *2
CLOCK	Current time *2

Table 50: Journey information

\*1 The range should be used for guidance purposes only. The value is not displayed in assistance mode [OFF].

\*2 The display of values is managed in the E-Tube project.



## 6.22 Brake

### WARNING

#### Crash caused by brake failure

Oil or lubricant on the brake disc in a disc brake or on the rim of a rim brake can cause the brake to fail completely. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow oil or lubricant to come into contact with the brake disc or brake linings or on the rim of a rim brake.
- ▶ If the brake linings have come into contact with oil or lubricant, contact specialist dealer to have the components cleaned or replaced.

If the brakes are applied continuously for a long time (e.g. while riding downhill for a long time), the fluid in the brake system may heat up. This may create a vapour bubble. This will cause air bubbles or water contained in the brake system to expand. This may suddenly make the lever travel wider. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Release the brake regularly when riding downhill for a longer period of time.

The motor drive force is shut off during the ride as soon as the rider is no longer pedalling. The drive system does not switch off when braking.

- ▶ In order to achieve optimum braking results, do not pedal while braking.

### 6.22.1 Using the brake lever

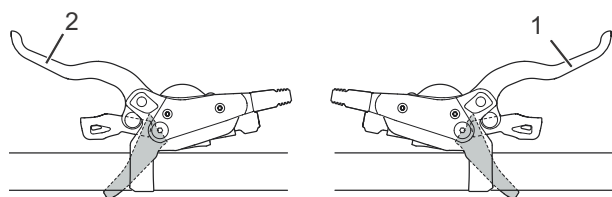


Figure 141: Brake lever, rear (1) and front (2), SHIMANO brake used as an example

- ▶ Push the left-hand *brake lever* to apply the *front wheel brake*.
- ▶ Push the right-hand *brake lever* to apply the *rear wheel brake*.
- ▶ Turn the setting wheel in an anti-clockwise direction to increase the rebound speed.
- ▶ Turn the setting wheel in a clockwise direction to decrease the rebound speed.

## 6.23 Suspension and damping

### Compression adjuster set to hard

- Causes the suspension fork to move higher within the deflection range. This improves efficiency, maintains momentum and makes it easier to ride over uniformly hilly terrain and around bends.
- Deflection may feel somewhat harder on rugged terrain.

### Compression adjuster set to soft

- Causes the fork to deflect quickly and easily. This makes it easier to maintain speed and momentum when riding over uneven rugged terrain.
- Deflection feels somewhat less hard on rugged terrain.



Figure 142: Optimum performance over bumps

When optimally adjusted, the fork deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The fork responds quickly to the bump. The headset and handlebars rise slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).

### Threshold

The damping threshold prevents deflection until a medium impact or downward force occurs. Threshold mode increases drive efficiency over level terrain.

The threshold setting can be used to improve pedalling efficiency over flat or hilly terrain. In threshold mode, higher pedelec speeds lead to greater impact force when a pedelec hits a bump, causing the fork to deflect, and the bump is absorbed.

- When the compression adjuster is in the open position (against the stop in an anti-clockwise direction), the suspension fork deflects quickly and unhindered through its entire deflection range when an impact or downward force occurs.
- When the compression adjuster is in the threshold position, the suspension fork counteracts deflection until a medium impact or downward force occurs.
- When the compression adjuster is in the blocked position (against the stop in a clockwise direction), the suspension fork counteracts deflection throughout its deflection range until a strong impact or downward force occurs.

### 6.23.0.1 Adjusting the RockShox compression adjuster

► Turn **compression adjuster** clockwise.

⇒ The damping and compression hardness is increased and the deflection stroke speed is reduced. Efficiency on hilly and flat terrain is improved.



Figure 143: Changing compression adjuster to a harder setting

► Turn **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.

⇒ The damping and compression hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.



Figure 144: Changing compression adjuster to a softer setting

## 6.24 Gear shift

The selection of the appropriate gear is a prerequisite for a physically comfortable ride and making sure that the electric drive system functions properly. The ideal pedalling frequency is between 70 and 80 revolutions per minute.

- ▶ Stop pedalling briefly when changing gears. This makes it easier to switch gears and reduces wear on the drivetrain.

### 6.24.1 Using the derailleur gears

The speed and range can be increased while applying the same force if you select the right gear. Use the derailleur gears.

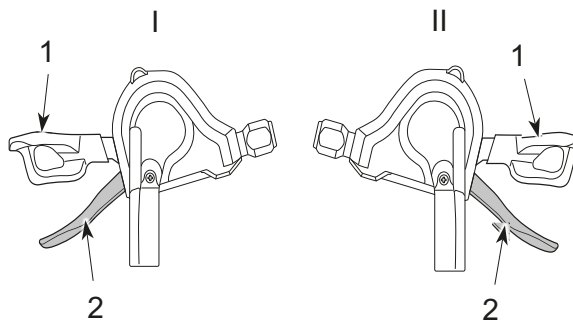


Figure 145: Down shifter (1) and up shifter (2) on the left (I) and right (II) gear shift

- ▶ Select the appropriate gear with the *shifter*.
- ⇒ The gear shift switches the gear.
- ⇒ The shifter returns to its original position.
- ▶ Clean and lubricate the rear derailleur if gear changes block.

## 6.25 Parking

### Notice

Heat or direct sunlight can cause the *tyre pressure* to increase above the permitted maximum pressure. This can destroy the *tyres*.

- ▶ Never park the pedelec in the sun.
- ▶ On hot days, regularly check the *tyre pressure* and adjust it as necessary.

Moisture penetrating at low temperatures may impair individual functions due to the open structural design.

- ▶ Always keep the pedelec dry and free from frost.
- ▶ If the pedelec is used at temperatures below 3 °C, the specialist dealer must perform maintenance beforehand and prepare it for winter use.

The pedelec's force of weight may cause the kickstand to sink into soft ground, possibly causing the pedelec to topple over as a result.

- ▶ The pedelec must be parked on firm, level ground only.

- 1 Switch off drive system (see [Section 6.17.2](#)).
- 2 After getting off, use your foot to lower the kickstand completely before parking. Ensure that it is stable.
- 3 Park the pedelec carefully and check that it is stable.
- 4 Protect saddle with saddle cover if you park the pedelec outside.
- 5 Lock the pedelec with the bicycle lock.

- 6 Remove the on-board computer (see [Section 6.18.1.1](#)), battery (see [Section 6.16.1.1](#), [6.16.2.1](#) or [6.16.3.1](#)) and mobile phone to protect against theft.
- 7 Clean and service pedelec after every ride; see [Section 7.2](#).

### Check list after each ride

Cleaning	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lights and reflectors See <a href="#">Section 7.2.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Brake See <a href="#">Section 7.2.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension fork See <a href="#">Section 7.2.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension seat post See <a href="#">Section 7.2.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rear frame damper See <a href="#">Section 7.2.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pedal See <a href="#">Section 7.2.4</a>
Care	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension fork See <a href="#">Section 3</a>

### 6.25.1 Screwing in the All Up handlebars

#### Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Screw in the All Up stem to save space when parking.

- 1 Open stem clamping lever.

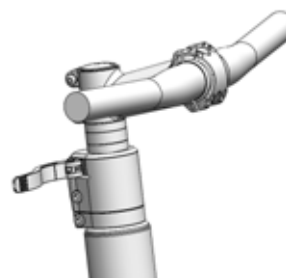


Figure 146: All Up with open stem clamping lever

- 2 Pull handlebars into highest possible position.

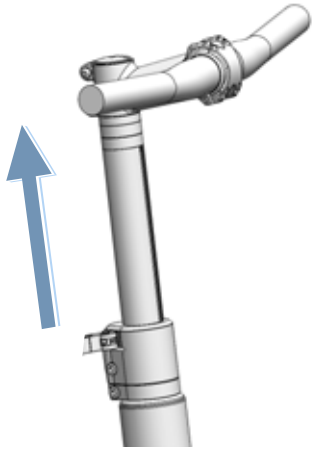


Figure 147: All Up pulled into highest possible position

- 3 Turn handlebars 90° in a clockwise direction.

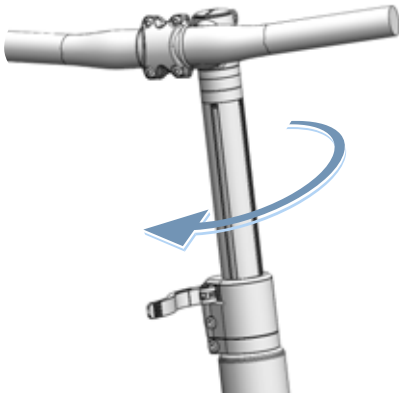


Figure 148: All Up screwed in

- 4 Place handlebars at required height
- 5 Close stem clamping lever.

## 7 Cleaning, servicing and maintenance

- Clean, service and maintain pedelec as indicated on check list.  
Complying with these measures is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

Check list before each ride	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check everything is sufficiently clean see <a href="#">Section 7.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards see <a href="#">Section 7.1.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place See <a href="#">Section 6.7.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check lights see <a href="#">Section 7.1.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake see <a href="#">Section 7.1.14</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check suspension seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.1.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pannier rack see <a href="#">Section 7.1.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check bell see <a href="#">Section 7.1.10</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handles see <a href="#">Section 7.1.11</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rear frame damper see <a href="#">Section 7.1.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel concentricity see <a href="#">Section 7.1.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check frame see <a href="#">Section 7.1.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check quick releases see <a href="#">Section 7.1.8</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards see <a href="#">Section 7.1.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check USB cover see <a href="#">Section 7.1.12</a>

Check list after each ride	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean lights see <a href="#">Section 7.2.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean reflectors see <a href="#">Section 7.2.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean brake see <a href="#">Section 7.2.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean suspension fork see <a href="#">Section 7.2.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for suspension fork see <a href="#">Section 3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean suspension seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.2.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean rear frame damper see <a href="#">Section 7.2.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean the pedals see <a href="#">Section 7.2.4</a>

Check list for weekly tasks	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain see <a href="#">Section 7.3.18</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	City, folding, cargo and children's bikes and bicycles for young adults <b>When dry:</b> every 10 days <b>In wet conditions:</b> every 2–6 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trekking and racing bikes <b>When dry:</b> every 140–200 km <b>In wet conditions:</b> every 100 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mountain bikes <b>When dry:</b> every 60–100 km <b>In wet conditions:</b> after every ride
<input type="checkbox"/>	Belt (every 250–300 km) see <a href="#">Section 7.3.17</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for chain. See <a href="#">Section 7.4.16</a> and <a href="#">Section 7.4.16.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	City, folding, cargo and children's bikes and bicycles for young adults <b>When dry:</b> every 10 days <b>In wet conditions:</b> every 2–6 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trekking and racing bikes <b>When dry:</b> every 140–200 km <b>In wet conditions:</b> every 100 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mountain bikes <b>When dry:</b> every 60–100 km <b>In wet conditions:</b> maintain every time
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain all-round chain guard. see <a href="#">Section 7.4.16.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyre pressure (at least once a week) see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyres (every 10 days) see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	eightpins seat post Refill oil (every 20 hours) see <a href="#">Section 7.4.19</a>

Check list for monthly tasks	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the battery see <a href="#">Section 7.3.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean control panel see <a href="#">Section 7.3.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean on-board computer see <a href="#">Section 7.3.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check disc brake linings once a month or after braking 1,000 times see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim brake brake linings (once a month or after braking 3000 times) see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check the rim brake surface. see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean brake lever see <a href="#">Section 7.3.15.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean brake disc see <a href="#">Section 7.3.16</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake disc see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake Bowden cables. see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean pannier rack see <a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean handles see <a href="#">Section 7.3.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for handles see <a href="#">Section 7.4.8</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check hand brake see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check hydraulic system see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean cassette see <a href="#">Section 7.3.14</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain and all-round chain guard see <a href="#">Section 7.3.18.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain wheels see <a href="#">Section 7.3.14</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean leather handles see <a href="#">Section 7.3.7.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for leather handles see <a href="#">Section 7.4.8.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean the leather saddle see <a href="#">Section 7.3.9.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for leather saddle see <a href="#">Section 7.4.11</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean handlebars see <a href="#">Section 7.3.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the motor see <a href="#">Section 7.3.3</a>

Check list for monthly tasks	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean hub see <a href="#">Section 7.3.12</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the frame see <a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean tyres see <a href="#">Section 7.3.10</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check back-pedal brake see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean saddle see <a href="#">Section 7.3.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.3.8</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.4.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean shifter see <a href="#">Section 7.3.13.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning gear shift see <a href="#">Section 7.3.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean shift cables see <a href="#">Section 7.3.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check disc brake see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean mudguard see <a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean kickstand see <a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean spokes and spoke nipples see <a href="#">Section 7.3.11</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for spoke nipples see <a href="#">Section 7.4.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean rigid fork see <a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean transmission see <a href="#">Section 7.3.13</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean front derailleur see <a href="#">Section 7.3.14</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean stem see <a href="#">Section 7.3.5</a>

Check list for tasks every three months	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake pressure point see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim brake (100 hours trip time or every 2,000 km) see <a href="#">Section 7.5.2.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check spokes see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>



Check list for tasks to do every six months (or every 1,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check Bowden cables gear shift see <a href="#">Section 7.5.10.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for brake lever see <a href="#">Section 7.4.18.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for carbon seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.4.9.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check electric cables in gear shift see <a href="#">Section 7.5.10.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for suspension seat post see <a href="#">Section 7.4.9.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for rims see <a href="#">Section 7.4.10</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rims see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim hooks see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for fork see <a href="#">Section 7.4.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check gear shift see <a href="#">Section 7.5.10</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for pannier rack see <a href="#">Section 7.4.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check chain see <a href="#">Section 7.5.8</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check derailleur gears See <a href="#">Section 7.5.9.1</a> and <a href="#">Section 7.5.10.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check chain tension see <a href="#">Section 7.5.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for handlebars see <a href="#">Section 7.4.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handlebars see <a href="#">Section 7.5.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check light see <a href="#">Section 7.5.3</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for hub see <a href="#">Section 7.4.12</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check hub gear see <a href="#">Section 7.5.9.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check nipple holes see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.4</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for pedals see <a href="#">Section 7.4.15</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pedal see <a href="#">Section 7.5.7</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for frame see <a href="#">Section 7.4.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check belt tension see <a href="#">Section 7.5.9</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check saddle see <a href="#">Section 7.5.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for shifter see <a href="#">Section 7.4.14.2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for rear derailleur articulated shaft see <a href="#">Section 7.4.14.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for rear derailleur jockey wheels see <a href="#">Section 7.4.14.1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Care for kickstand see <a href="#">Section 7.4.5</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check kickstand stability see <a href="#">Section 7.5.15</a>

Check list for tasks to do every six months (or every 1,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check steering headset see <a href="#">Section 8.5.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Servicing the stem see <a href="#">Section 7.4.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Checking the stem see <a href="#">Section 7.5.4</a>

#### Yearly or every 2,000 km

<input type="checkbox"/>	Adjust hub with cone bearing see <a href="#">Section 8.5.6</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check nipple well (every 1,000 hours or every 2,000 km) see <a href="#">Section 7.5.1.5</a>

 **WARNING**
**Crash caused by brake failure**

Oil or lubricant on the brake disc in a disc brake or on the rim of a rim brake can cause the brake to fail completely. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow oil or lubricant to come into contact with the brake disc or brake linings or on the rim of a rim brake.
- ▶ If the brake linings have come into contact with oil or lubricant, contact specialist dealer to have the components cleaned or replaced.
- ▶ Apply the brakes a few times to test them after cleaning, servicing or repair.

The brake system is not designed for use on a pedelec which is placed on its side or turned upside down. The brake may not function correctly as a result. This can cause a crash, which may result in injuries.

- ▶ If the pedelec is placed on its side or turned upside down, apply the brakes a couple of times before setting off to ensure they work as normal.

The brake seals are unable to withstand high pressures. Damaged brakes can fail and cause an accident with injury.

- ▶ Never clean the pedelec with a pressure washer or compressed air.

Take great care when using a hosepipe. Never point the water jet directly at the seal section.

 **CAUTION**
**Crash and falling caused by unintentional activation**

There is a risk of injury if the drive system is activated unintentionally.

Remove the battery before cleaning.

**Notice**

Water may enter the inside of the bearings if you use a steam jet. This dilutes the lubricant inside, the friction increases and, as a result, the bearings are permanently damaged in the long term. Water may also penetrate the electric components and damage them permanently.

- ▶ Never clean pedelec with a pressure washer, water jet or compressed air.

Greased parts, such as the seat post, the handlebars or the stem, may no longer be safely and reliably clamped.

- ▶ Never apply grease or oil to parts which are clamped.

Harsh cleaning agents such as acetone, methylene and trichloroethylene and solvents such as thinners, alcohol and corrosion protection can attack pedelec components and damage them permanently.

- ▶ Use approved bicycle or pedelec cleaning and care products only.

## 7.1 Before each ride

Complying with these cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

### 7.1.1 Checking the guards

The chain or belt guards, mudguards or the motor cover can break off and go missing when the pedelec is transported or parked outside.

- ▶ Check that all guards are in place.

### 7.1.2 Checking the frame

- ▶ Check frame for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- ▶ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.3 Checking the fork

- ▶ Check fork for cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil and damage to the paintwork. Also look at hidden parts on the underside.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.4 Checking the rear frame damper

- ▶ Check rear frame damper for cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil and damage to the paintwork. Also look at hidden parts on the underside.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.5 Checking the pannier rack

- 1 Hold onto pedelec by its frame. Hold onto pannier rack with the other hand.
- 2 Move the pannier rack backwards and forwards to check that all screw connections are firmly in place.
  - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.
  - ⇒ Attach loose baskets permanently with a basket bracket or cable ties.

### 7.1.6 Checking the guards

- 1 Hold onto pedelec by its frame. Hold onto mudguard rack with the other hand.
- 2 Move the mudguard backwards and forwards to check that all screw connections are firmly in place.
  - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.

### 7.1.7 Checking wheel concentricity

- ▶ Lift the front and rear wheels one after the other. and spin each wheel when lifted.
- ⇒ If the wheel is loose or is crooked when it turns, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.8 Checking the quick releases

- ▶ Check quick releases to ensure that all quick releases are firmly in their fully closed end position.
  - ⇒ If a quick release is not firmly in its closed end position, open quick release and place in its end position.
  - ⇒ If the quick release cannot be firmly placed in its end position, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.9 Checking the suspension seat post

- ▶ Deflect and let the suspension seat post rebound.
  - ⇒ If you hear unusual noises when the suspension seat post deflects and rebounds, or it yields without any resistance, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.10 Checking the bell

- 1 Press the bell button downwards.
  - 2 Let button spring back.
- ⇒ If you do not hear a clear, distinct ring of the bell, replace bell. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.11 Checking the handles

- ▶ Check the handles are firmly in place.
- ⇒ Screw loose handles firmly into place.

### 7.1.12 Checking the USB cover

- ⇒ If featured, check the position of the *cover on the USB port* on a regular basis and adjust if necessary.

### 7.1.13 Checking the lighting

- 1 Switch light on.
  - 2 Check that the front and rear lights come on.
- ⇒ If the front and rear lights do not come on, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.1.14 Checking the brake

- 1 Pull both brake levers when stationary.
  - 2 Push the pedals.
- ⇒ If no resistance is generated in the usual brake lever position, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ If the brake is losing fluid, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

## 7.2 After each ride

Complying with these cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

The following items should be ready for use to clean the pedelec after each ride:



Tool		Cleaning agent	
 Cloth	 Bucket	 Water	 Dish-washing liquid
 Brush	 Fork oil		

Table 51: Required tools and cleaning agents after each ride

### 7.2.1 Cleaning the lights and reflectors



- 1 Clean front light, rear light and reflectors with a damp cloth.

### 7.2.2 Cleaning the suspension fork



- 1 Remove dirt and deposits from the stanchions and deflector seals with a damp cloth. Check the stanchions for dents, scratches, staining or leaking oil.
- 2 Lubricate the dust seals and stanchions with a few drops of silicone spray.
- 3 Care for the suspension fork after cleaning.

### 7.2.3 Caring for the suspension fork



- ▶ Treat dust seals with fork oil.

### 7.2.4 Cleaning the pedals



- ▶ Clean pedals with a brush and soapy water.

### 7.2.5 Cleaning the brake



- ▶ Clean dirt on the rim and brake components with a slightly dampened cloth.

### 7.2.6 Cleaning the suspension seat post



- ▶ Clean dirt on the articulated joints with a slightly dampened cloth immediately after a ride.

### 7.2.7 Cleaning the rear frame damper



- ▶ Clean dirt on the articulated joints with a slightly dampened cloth immediately after a ride.

## 7.3 Basic cleaning

Complying with these basic cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

The following are required for basic cleaning:

Tool		Cleaning agent	
			
Gloves	Toothbrush	Water	Lubricant
			
Cloth	Paintbrush	Dish-washing liquid	Brake cleaner
			
Sponge	Watering can	Degreaser	Leather cleaner
			
Brushes	Bucket		

Table 52: Required tools and cleaning agents for basic cleaning

- ✓ Remove battery and on-board computer before thorough cleaning.

### 7.3.1 On-board computer and control panel



#### Notice

If water enters the on-board computer, it will be permanently damaged.

- ▶ Never immerse the on-board computer in water.
  - ▶ Never use a cleaning agent.
- 
- ▶ Carefully clean the on-board computer and control panel with a soft, damp cloth.

### 7.3.2 Rechargeable battery



#### CAUTION

#### Risk of fire and explosion due to penetration by water

The battery is only protected from simple spray water. Penetration by water can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Keep contacts dry and clean.
- ▶ Never immerse the battery in water.

#### Notice

- ▶ Never use a cleaning agent.

- 1 Clean the battery electrical connections with a dry cloth or paintbrush only.
- 2 Wipe off the decorative sides with a damp cloth.

### 7.3.3 Motor



#### Notice

If water enters the motor, it will be permanently damaged.

- ▶ Never open the motor.
  - ▶ Never immerse the motor in water.
  - ▶ Never use cleaning agents.
- 
- ▶ Carefully clean the motor on the outside with a soft, damp cloth.

### 7.3.4 Frame, fork, pannier rack, guards and kickstand



- 1 Soak the components with dish-washing detergent if the dirt is thick and ingrained.
- 2 After leaving it to soak for a short time, remove the dirt and mud with a sponge, brush and toothbrushes.
- 3 Rinse off the components with water from a watering can.
- 4 Wipe away oil stains with a degreaser.

### 7.3.5 Stem



- 1 Clean stem with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

### 7.3.6 Handlebars



- 1 Clean handlebars, including handles and all gears or twist grips, with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

### 7.3.7 Handles



- 1 Clean handles with sponge, water and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Care for rubber handles after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.8](#)).

### 7.3.7.1 Leather handles



Leather is a natural product and has similar properties to human skin. Regular cleaning and care help to prevent leather dehydrating, fading or becoming brittle or stained.

- 1 Remove dirt with a soft, damp cloth.
- 2 Remove stubborn stains with a leather cleaner.
- 3 Care for leather handles after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.8.2](#)).

### 7.3.8 Seat post



- 1 Clean seat post with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Wipe away any grease or assembly paste residue with a cloth and degreaser.

### 7.3.9 Saddle



- 1 Clean the saddle with lukewarm water and a cloth dampened with soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

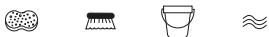
### 7.3.9.1 Leather saddle



Leather is a natural product and has similar properties to human skin. Regular cleaning and care help to prevent leather dehydrating, fading or becoming brittle or stained.

- 1 Remove dirt with a soft, damp cloth.
- 2 Remove stubborn stains with a leather cleaner.
- 3 Care for leather saddle after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.11](#)).

### 7.3.10 Tyres



- 1 Clean tyres with a sponge, a brush and soap cleaner.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Remove any embedded chips and small stones.

### 7.3.11 Spokes and spoke nipples

- 1 Clean spokes from the inside to the outside with a sponge, brush and soapy water.
- 2 Clean rim with a sponge.
- 3 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 4 Care for spoke nipples after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.13](#)).

### 7.3.12 Hub



- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Remove dirt from hub with a sponge and soapy water.
- 3 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 4 Wipe off oily dirt with a degreaser and a cloth.

### 7.3.13 Switching elements



- 1 Clean gear shift, shift cables and transmission with water, a brush and dish-washing detergent.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

#### 7.3.13.1 Shifter



- ▶ Carefully clean shifter with a damp, soft cloth.

### 7.3.14 Cassette, chain wheels and front derailleur

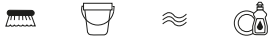


- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Spray the cassette, the chain wheels and the front derailleur with a degreasing agent.
- 3 Clean coarse dirt with a brush after soaking for a short time.
- 4 Wash down all parts with dish-washing detergent and a toothbrush.
- 5 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.



## 7.3.15 Brake

### 7.3.15.1 Brake lever



- ▶ Carefully clean the brake levers with a damp, soft cloth.

### 7.3.16 Brake disc



#### Notice

- ▶ Protect brake disc against lubricants and grease from hands.

- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Spray brake disc with brake disc cleaning spray.
- 3 Wipe with a cloth.

### 7.3.17 Belt



#### Notice

- ▶ Never use aggressive (acid-based) cleaners, rust removers or degreasers when cleaning the belt.

- 1 Dampen a cloth with soapy water. Place the cloth on the belt.
- 2 Hold and apply slight pressure while slowly turning the rear wheel, so the belt passes through the cloth.

## 7.3.18 Chain



#### Notice

- ▶ Never use aggressive (acid-based) cleaners, rust removers or degreasers when cleaning the chain.
- ▶ Never use gun oil or rust remover spray.
- ▶ Never use chain cleaning devices or chain cleaning baths.
- ▶ Have chain with all-round guard cleaned and cared for during maintenance.

- ✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect dirt.

- 1 Slightly dampen a brush with dish-washing liquid. Brush both sides of the chain.
- 2 Dampen a cloth with soapy water. Place the cloth on the chain.
- 3 Hold and apply slight pressure while slowly turning the rear wheel, so the chain passes through the cloth.
- 4 Wipe off oily, dirty chains thoroughly with a cloth and degreaser.
- 5 Care for chain after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.16](#)).

### 7.3.18.1 Chain with all-round chain guard



#### Notice

The chain guard must be removed before cleaning. Contact specialist dealer.

- ▶ Clean water hole on the chain guard lower surface.
- ▶ Care for chain after cleaning (see [Section 7.4.16.1](#)).

## 7.4 Servicing

Complying with these servicing instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

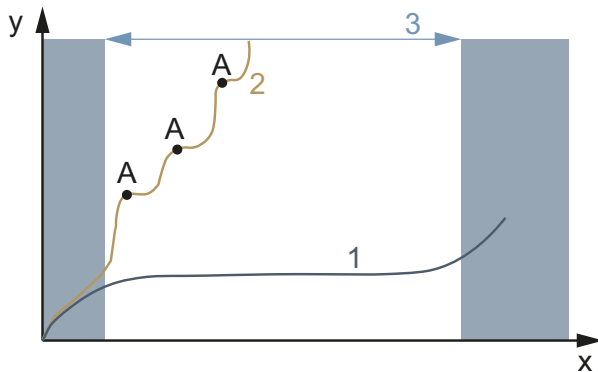


Figure 149: Diagram showing wear, operating hours (x) vs. material erosion (y)

The service life (3) of an optimally serviced drive chain (1) is almost three times as long with lubrication (A) compared to a drive chain (2) lubricated on an irregular basis.

These tools and cleaning agents are required for servicing:




Tool		Cleaning agent	
 Cloth	 Toothbrush	 Frame wax spray	 Silicone or Teflon oil
		 Acid-free lubricating grease	 Fork oil
		 Teflon spray	 Spray oil
		 Chain oil	 Leather care product

Table 53: Required tools and cleaning agents for servicing


		 Battery terminal grease	
--	--	--	--

Table 53: Required tools and cleaning agents for servicing

### 7.4.1 Frame



#### Notice

- ▶ Hard wax polish and protection wax are particularly resistant on gloss paintwork. These car accessory retail products are unsuitable for matt paint finishes.
- ▶ Try wax spray out on a small spot before application.

- 1 Dry frame with a cloth.
- 2 Spray frame with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

### 7.4.2 Fork

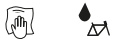


#### Notice

- ▶ Hard wax polish and protection wax are particularly resistant on gloss paintwork. These car accessory retail products are unsuitable for matt paint finishes.
- ▶ Try wax spray out on a small spot before application.

- 1 Dry frame with a cloth.
- 2 Spray care oil on frame and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

### 7.4.3 Pannier rack



- 1 Dry pannier rack with a cloth.
- 2 Spray pannier rack with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe pannier rack with a cloth.
- 4 Protect chafing points on panniers with adhesive film. Replace worn adhesive film.
- 5 Care for coil springs with silicone spray or wax spray from time to time.

### 7.4.4 Mudguard



- Depending on the requirements for the material in the mudguard, apply hard wax polish, metal polish or a plastic care product as per the product instructions.

### 7.4.5 Servicing the kickstand



- 1 Dry kickstand with a cloth.
- 2 Spray kickstand rack with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe down kickstand with a cloth.
- 4 Lubricate the kickstand joints with spray oil.

### 7.4.6 Stem



- 1 Spray painted and polished metal surfaces with wax spray and leave to dry.
- 2 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.
- 3 Apply silicone or Teflon oil to the stem shaft tube and the quick release lever pivot point with a cloth.

- 4 If you have a Speedlifter Twist, also apply oil to the unlocking bolt groove in the Speedlifter body.
- 5 Apply a little acid-free lubricant grease between the stem quick release lever and the sliding piece to reduce the quick release lever operating force.
- 6 If you have a stem with a cone clamp, apply a new protective layer of assembly paste onto the stem and fork steerer contact point once a year.

### 7.4.7 Handlebars



- 1 Spray painted and polished metal surfaces with wax spray and leave to dry.
- 2 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

### 7.4.8 Handle

#### 7.4.8.1 Rubber handles

- 1 Apply talcum powder to sticky rubber handles.

#### Notice

- Never apply talcum powder to leather or foam handles.

#### 7.4.8.2 Leather handle



Standard leather care products keep leather smooth and resistant, brighten its appearance and improve or replace stain protection.

- 1 Try leather care product out on a less visible spot before use.
- 2 Care for leather handles with a leather care product.

### 7.4.9 Seat post

- 1 Carefully preserve screw connections with wax spray. In doing so, ensure that no wax is applied to the metal contact surfaces.
- 2 Replace the assembly paste protective layer on the metal contact surfaces on the seat post and seat tube every year.

#### 7.4.9.1 Suspension seat post



- 1 Lubricate articulated joints with spray oil.
- 2 Deflect and let the suspension seat post rebound five times. Remove any surplus lubricant with a clean cloth.

#### 7.4.9.2 Carbon seat post



### Notice

Rain and puddle water can cause contact corrosion if carbon seat posts are used in an aluminium frame without protective assembly paste. It may then take a great deal of force to remove the seat post. The carbon seat post may break as a result.

- 1 Take out the carbon seat post.
- 2 Remove old assembly paste with a cloth.
- 3 Apply new assembly paste with a cloth.
- 4 Re-insert the carbon seat post.

### 7.4.10 Rim



- Care for chrome rims, stainless steel rims and polished aluminium with chrome or metal polish. Never care for the brake surface with polish.

### 7.4.11 Leather saddle



Standard leather care products keep leather smooth and resistant, brighten its appearance and improve or replace stain protection.

- 1 Try leather care product out on a less visible spot before use.
- 2 Care for leather saddle from below with a leather care product. Only care for the top of leather saddles with a leather care product if they are badly worn and dried-out.
- 3 Avoid wearing light-coloured trousers after care due to staining.

### 7.4.12 Hub



- 1 Apply wax spray especially around the spoke holes. In doing so, ensure that no wax is applied to brake parts.
- 2 Treat rubber seals with a cloth with one or two drops of silicone spray. Never use oil if you have disc brakes.

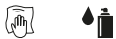
### 7.4.13 Spoke nipples



- 1 Apply wax spray onto the spoke nipples from the rim side.
- 2 Treat heavily corroded spoke nipples with a drop of penetrating of special care oil.

## 7.4.14 Gear shift

### 7.4.14.1 Rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheels



- ▶ Treat front and rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheels with Teflon spray.

### 7.4.14.2 Shifter



## Notice

- ▶ Never treat shifters with degreaser or penetrating oil spray.
- ▶ Lubricate articulated joints and mechanical parts which are accessible from outside with a few drops of spray oil or precision mechanics oil.

## 7.4.15 Pedal



- 1 Treat pedals with spray oil. In doing so, ensure that no lubricant is applied to the pedal surfaces.
- 2 Lubricate seals and mechanical parts sparingly with a few drops of oil.
- 3 Remove any surplus lubricant with a clean cloth.
- 4 Spray metal foot rests with silicone spray.

## 7.4.16 Caring for the chain



- ✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect chain oil.
- 1 Lift rear wheel.
  - 2 Turn the crank briskly in an anti-clockwise direction.
  - 3 Use slight finger pressure to the chain oil bottle to apply a wafer-thin thread of oil to the chain links. The faster the crank is turned, the thinner the threads of oil will be.

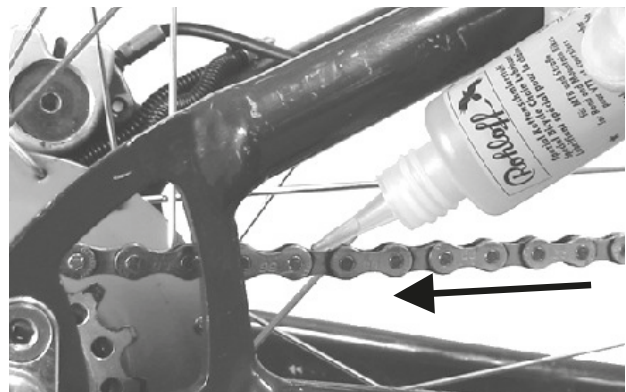


Figure 150: Lubricating the chain

- 4 Remove excessive chain oil with a cloth. If you apply too much oil, it will make the chain all the dirtier at a later point in time.
- 5 Leave chain oil to penetrate into the chain links for a few hours or overnight.

### 7.4.16.1 Caring for the chain and all-round chain guard



- ✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect chain oil.
- 1 Lift rear wheel.
- 2 Turn the crank briskly in an anti-clockwise direction.
- 3 Use slight finger pressure to the chain oil bottle to apply a wafer-thin thread of oil onto the chain links through the oil hole on the upper surface of the chain guard. The faster the crank is turned, the thinner the threads of oil will be.
- 4 Remove excessive chain oil with a cloth. If you apply too much oil, it will make the chain all the dirtier at a later point in time.
- 5 Leave chain oil to penetrate into the chain links for a few hours or overnight.

### 7.4.17 Caring for the battery



- ▶ Grease plug terminals on the battery with terminal grease or contact spray from time to time.

### 7.4.18 Caring for the brake

#### 7.4.18.1 Caring for the brake



#### Notice

- ▶ Never treat brake levers with degreaser or penetrating oil spray.
- ▶ Lubricate articulated joints and mechanical parts which are accessible from outside with a few drops of spray oil or precision mechanics oil.

### 7.4.19 Lubricating the Eightpins seat post tube

- ▶ Use a 2.5 ml syringe to carefully fill Eightpins Fluid V3 very slowly into the lubricating nipple on the outer tube.



Figure 151: Lubricating the chain

#### Notice

- ▶ Fill a maximum of 2.5 ml since otherwise the reservoir inside will overflow and the oil will spill into the frame.

## 7.5 Maintenance

The following tools are required for maintenance:









	Gloves
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm and 15 mm
	Torque wrench Working range 5–40 Nm
	<b>by.schulz handlebars:</b> TORX® bits: 4 mm, 5 mm and 6 mm <b>If not:</b> Hexagon bits: 4 mm, 5 mm and 6 mm
	Hexagon socket spanner 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Spline nut socket T25
	Cross-recess screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 54: Tools required for maintenance

### 7.5.1 Wheel

- 1 Hold pedelec.
- 2 Hold onto the front or rear wheel and try to move the wheel sideways. In doing so, check to see if the wheel nuts or quick releases move.
  - ⇒ If the wheel, the wheel nut or quick release moves sideways, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 3 Lift pedelec slightly. Turn front or rear wheel. In doing so, check whether the wheel deflects sideways or outwards.
  - ⇒ If the wheel deflects sideways or outwards, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

#### 7.5.1.1 Checking the tyre pressure

### Notice

If the tyre pressure is too low in the tyre, the tyre does not achieve its load bearing capacity. The tyre is not stable and may come off the rim.

- ▶ If the tyre pressure is too high, the tyre may burst.

Tyres are wear parts and wear away due to fatigue, storage, environmental influences or mechanical impacts. Only optimum tyre pressure will guarantee effective protection against punctures, lower rolling resistance, a longer service life and greater safety.

#### Air loss

Even the most airtight tube will lose pressure on a continuous basis since the air pressures in a pedelec tyre are significantly higher and the wall thicknesses significantly finer than in a car tyre. Pressure loss of 1 bar per month can be regarded as normal. During this process, the pressure loss is significantly faster at high pressures and significantly slower at low pressures.

#### Checking tyre pressure

The permitted pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre.



Figure 152: Tyre pressure in bar (1) and psi (2)

- ▶ Verify tyre pressure against the value noted in the pedelec pass every 10 days as a minimum.

**Dunlop valve**

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The tyre pressure cannot be measured on the simple Dunlop valve. The tyre pressure is therefore measured in the filling hose when pumping slowly with the bicycle pump.

✓ It is recommendable to use a bicycle pump with a pressure gauge.

- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
- 2 Undo the rim nuts.
- 3 Connect the bicycle pump.
- 4 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- 5 Correct the tyre pressure to meet the specified value in the Pedelec pass.
- 6 If the tyre pressure is too high, unfasten the union nut, let air out and re-tighten the union nut.
- 7 Remove the bicycle pump.
- 8 Screw the valve cap tight.
- 9 Screw the rim nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.

⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see [Section 6.6.8](#)).

**Schrader valve**

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

✓ It is recommended to use the air pump at a filling station. Older and easy bicycle pumps are unsuitable for filling tyres via a Schrader valve.

- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
  - 1 Undo the rim nuts.
  - 2 Attach the bicycle pump.
  - 3 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- ⇒ The tyre pressure has been adjusted as per the specifications.
- 4 Remove the bicycle pump.
  - 5 Screw the valve cap tight.

- 6 Screw the rim nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.

⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see [Section 6.6.8](#)).

**Presta valve**

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

✓ It is recommendable to use a bicycle pump with a pressure gauge. The operating instructions for the bicycle pump must be adhered to.

- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
- 2 Open the knurled nut around four turns.
- 3 Carefully apply the bicycle pump so that the valve insert is not bent.
- 4 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- 5 Correct the tyre pressure as per the specifications on the tyre.
- 6 Remove the bicycle pump.
- 7 Tighten the knurled nut with your fingers.
- 8 Screw the valve cap tight.
- 9 Screw the knurled nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.

⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see [Section 6.6.8](#)).



### 7.5.1.2 Checking the tyres

The tread is far less important for bicycle tyres than it is for car tyres, for example. Consequently, tyres can still be used with a worn tread with the exception of tyres on mountain bikes.

- 1 Check the tread wear. The tyre is worn if the anti-puncture protection or the carcass cords are visible.

Since resistance to punctures also depends on the thickness of the tread, it may make sense to change the tyre at an earlier stage.



Figure 153: Tyre without tread which can still be used (1) and tyre with puncture protection showing through (2), which needs to be replaced

- 2 Check the side walls for wear. If there are any cracks or tears, the tyre must be replaced.



Figure 154: Examples of fatigue cracks (1) and ageing cracks (2)

- ⇒ Replacing a wheel requires considerable mechanical expertise. If a tyre is worn, it needs to be replaced at a specialist dealer's.

### 7.5.1.3 Checking the rims



#### Crash caused by a worn rim

A worn rim can break and block the wheel. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Check rim *wear* on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take pedelec out of service if the rim has any cracks or warping. Contact specialist dealer.

Rims are wear parts and wear away due to fatigue, mechanical impacts, environmental influences or due to braking if rim brakes are used.

- ▶ Check the rim well for wear.
  - ⇒ The rims of a rim brake with invisible wear indicator are worn as soon as the wear indicator becomes visible in the area of the rim joint.
  - ⇒ The rims with visible wear indicator are worn as soon as the black, all-round groove on the pad friction surface is no longer visible. We recommend that you also replace the *rims* with every second brake lining replacement.
- ▶ We recommend that you also replace the *rims* at the same time as every second brake lining replacement.

### 7.5.1.4 Checking the nipple holes

Nipples cause fatigue and stress on the edge of the nipple hole.

- ▶ Check whether there are cracks on the edge of the nipple hole.

If there are cracks on the edge of the nipple hole, contact your specialist dealer.

### 7.5.1.5 Checking the nipple well

The nipple holes can weaken the tyre bed.

- ▶ Check to see if cracks are emerging from the nipple holes.
  - ⇒ If there are cracks radiating from the nipple hole, contact your specialist dealer.

### 7.5.1.6 Checking the rim hooks

Mechanical impacts can warp the rim hooks. There is no longer a guarantee that a tyre can be fitted safely if this is the case.

- ▶ Check for twisted rim hooks.
  - ⇒ Replace rims with twisted rim hooks. Never repair the rim with pliers and bend the hook back.

### 7.5.1.7 Checking the spokes

- ▶ Press spokes slightly together with your thumb and index finger. Check to ensure that the tension is the same for all spokes.
  - ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the spokes are loose or are tensioned differently.

## 7.5.2 Checking the brake system



### Crash caused by brake failure

Worn brake discs and brake linings and a lack of hydraulic fluid in the brake line reduce the braking power. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Check brake disc, brake linings and the hydraulic brake system regularly. Contact specialist dealer.

The maintenance interval for the brake depends on how often it is used and the weather conditions. If the pedelec is used under extreme conditions such as rain, dirt or high mileage, maintenance must be performed more frequently.

### 7.5.2.1 Checking the hand brake

- 1 Check whether all screws in the handbrake are firmly in place.
  - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.
- 2 Check whether the brake lever is torsionally rigid on the handlebars.
  - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.
- 3 Check that there is a gap of at least 1 cm between the handbrake lever and the handle when the brake lever is fully applied.
  - ⇒ Adjust the grip distance if the gap is too narrow (see [Section 6.5.9.6](#), [Section 6.5.9.4](#) or [Section 6.6.9.4](#)).
- 4 Check the braking effect by pedalling while pulling the brake lever.
  - ⇒ If the braking power is too weak, adjust the brake pressure point (see [Section 6.5.9.8](#)).
  - ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the pressure point cannot be reached.

### 7.5.2.2 Checking the hydraulic system

- 1 Push the brake lever and check whether any brake fluid leaks out of the lines, connections or on the brake linings.
  - ⇒ If any brake fluid leaks from anywhere, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 2 Push brake lever and hold several times.
  - ⇒ If you are unable to clearly detect the pressure point and it changes, the brake needs to be bled. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.5.2.3 Checking the Bowden cables

- 1 Pull on the brake lever several times. Check whether the Bowden cables get stuck or they make scraping noises.
- 2 Check the physical condition of the Bowden cables for visible damage and check to see if wire strands are broken.
  - ⇒ Have defective Bowden cables replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.5.2.4 Checking the disc brake

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

#### Checking the brake linings

- ▶ Check that the brake linings are no less than 1.8 mm wide at any point and there are no less than 2.5 mm between the brake lining and supporting plate.



Figure 155: Checking the brake lining when fitted with the help of the transport safety wear gauge

- 1 Check brake linings for damage and thick dirt.
  - ⇒ Have damaged or very dirty brake linings replaced. Contact specialist dealer.
- 2 Push brake lever and hold.
- 3 In doing so, check whether the transport safety wear gauge can fit between the brake lining supporting plates.
  - ⇒ If the transport safety wear gauge fits between the supporting plates, the brake linings have not reached their wear limit. Contact your specialist dealer if they are worn.

#### Checking the brake discs

- ✓ Put on gloves as the brake disc is very sharp.
- 1 Take hold of brake disc and joggle it gently to check whether the brake disc is positioned against the wheel free of backlash.
  - 2 Check that the brake linings move uniformly and symmetrically back towards the brake disc when you pull and release the brake lever.
    - ⇒ If the brake disc can be moved or the brake linings move erratically, contact your specialist dealer.
  - 3 Check that the brake disc is no less than 1.8 mm thick at any point.
    - ⇒ If the brake disc is under the wear limit and is less than 1.8 mm thick, the brake disc must be replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.5.3 Checking the lighting

- 1 Check the cable connections on the front and rear lights for damage and corrosion and ensure they are firmly in position.
- ⇒ If cable connections are damaged or corroded, or are not firmly in positioned. take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 2 Switch light on.
- 3 Check that the front and rear lights come on.
- ⇒ If the front or rear lights do not come on, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 4 Place pedelec 5 m from the wall.
- 5 Stand the pedelec up straight. Hold the handlebars straight with both hands. Do not use the kickstand.

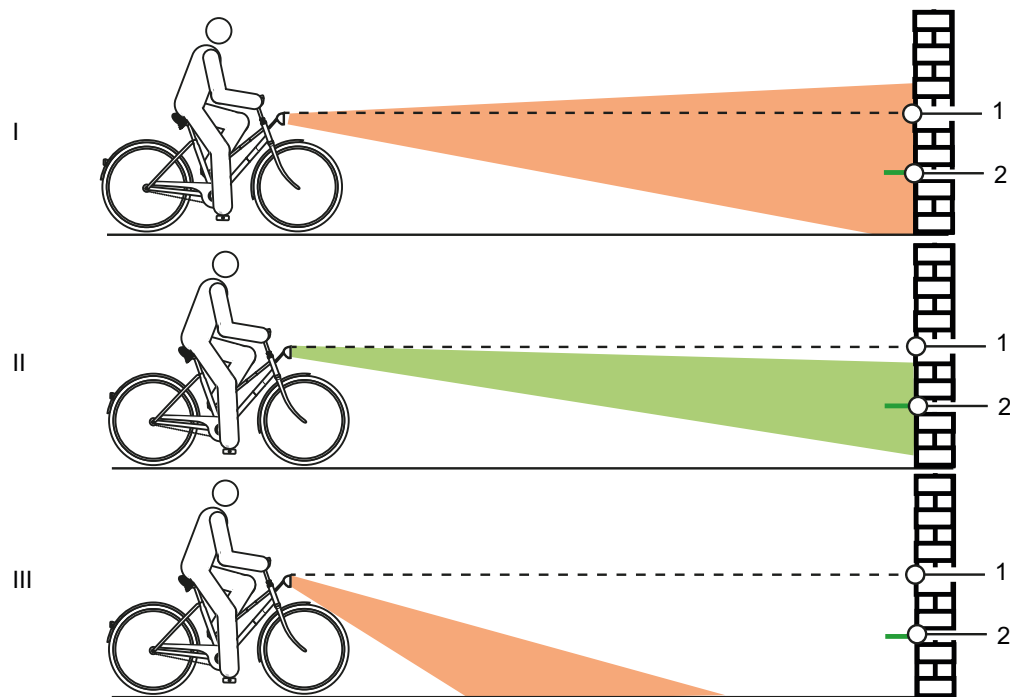


Figure 156: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

- 6 Check the position of the light beam.
- ⇒ If the light is positioned too high or too low, adjust riding light (see [Section 6.6.17](#)).

### 7.5.4 Checking the stem

- ▶ The stem and quick release system must be inspected at regular intervals. The specialist dealer should adjust them if they require adjustment.
- ▶ If the hexagon socket head screw is also loosened, the headset backlash also needs to be adjusted. Medium-strength thread locker, such as Loctite blue, then needs to be applied to the loosened screws and the screws tightened as per specifications.
- ▶ Check metal contact surfaces on cone, stem clamping screw and fork steerer for corrosion.
- ⇒ Take pedelec out of service if there is any wear or signs of corrosion. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.5.5 Check the handlebars

- 1 Take hold of handlebars with both hands on the handles.
  - 2 Move handlebars up and down and press to tilt.
- ⇒ If the handlebars move, contact specialist dealer.
- 3 Place front wheel in position where it can't move sideways (e.g. in a bike stand).
  - 4 Hold handlebars firmly with both hands.
  - 5 Check if the handlebars are able to twist against the front wheel.
- ⇒ If the handlebars can move, contact your specialist dealer.

### 7.5.6 Checking the saddle

- 1 Hold saddle firmly.
  - 2 Check whether the saddle twists, tilts or can be pushed in one direction or other.
- ⇒ If the saddle twists, tilts or can be pushed in one direction or other, adjust the saddle (see Section xxx).
  - ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the saddle cannot be fixed into position.

### 7.5.7 Checking the seat post

- 1 Take seat post out of the frame.
  - 2 Check seat post for cracks and corrosion.
  - 3 Reinsert seat post.
  - 4 Check pedal.
  - 5 Hold pedal and try to move it sideways toward the inside or outside. In doing so, observe whether the crank arm or bearing move sideways.
- ⇒ If the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves sideways, fasten screw on the pedal crank rear.
- 6 Hold pedal and try to move it upwards and downwards vertically. In doing so, observe whether the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves vertically.
- ⇒ If the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves vertically, fasten screw.

### 7.5.8 Checking the chain

- ▶ Check chain for rust or warping.
- ⇒ Replace a rusted chain since it will not be able to withstand the tensile loads from the drive. Contact your specialist retailer.

### 7.5.9 Checking the chain and belt tension

#### Notice

Excessive chain tension increases wear. If the chain tension is too low, there is a risk that the *chain* will slip off the *chain wheels*.

- ▶ Check the chain tension once a month.

- 7 If a hub gear is fitted, the rear wheel must be pushed backwards and forwards to tighten the chain. Contact specialist dealer.

### 7.5.9.1 Checking the derailleur gears

The chain is tensioned by the rear derailleur in pedelecs with derailleur gears.

- 1 Place the pedelec on stand.
  - 2 Check to see if the chain is sagging (visual inspection).
  - 3 Gently press the rear derailleur forwards to check whether it moves and whether it goes back into position by itself.
- ⇒ If the chain is sagging or the rear derailleur does not go back into position by itself, contact your specialist dealer.

### 7.5.9.2 Checking the hub gear

In the case of pedelecs with a hub gear or back-pedal brake, the chain or the belt is tensioned by a eccentric bearing in the bottom bracket axle. Special tools and specialist knowledge are required to tension the chain. Contact specialist dealer.

- ✓ Remove the chain guard on pedelecs with a circumferential chain guard.
- 1 Place the pedelec on stand.
  - 2 Check the chain and belt tension in three or four positions, turning the crank a full revolution.

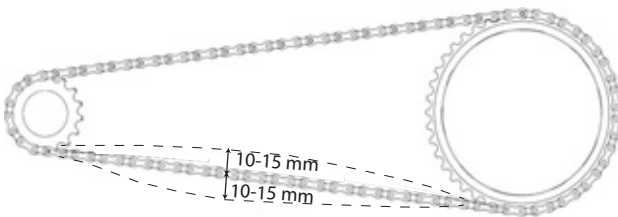


Figure 157: Checking the chain tension

- ⇒ If the chain or the belt can be pushed more than 2 cm, the chain will need to be re-tensioned. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ If the chain or belt can only be pushed up and down less than 1 cm, you will need to the chain or belt slightly. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ The ideal chain and belt tension has been achieved if the chain can be pushed between a maximum of 10 and 15 mm in the middle between the pinion and the toothed wheel. The crank must also turn without resistance.

### 7.5.10 Checking the gear shift

- 1 Check whether all gear shift components are free of damage.
- 2 Contact your specialist dealer if components are damaged.
- 3 Place the pedelec on stand.
- 4 Turn the pedal crank clockwise.
- 5 Switch through all speeds.
- 6 Check that pedelec can switch through all speeds without making unusual noises.
- 7 Adjust the gear shift if gears can not be changed correctly.

#### 7.5.10.1 Electric gear shift

- 1 Check the cable connections for damage and corrosion and ensure they are firmly in position.
- ⇒ If cable connections are loose, damaged or corroded, contact your specialist dealer.

#### 7.5.10.2 Mechanical gear shift

- 1 Change gear a number of times. Check whether the Bowden cables get stuck or they make scraping noises.
  - 2 Check the physical condition of the Bowden cables for visible damage and check to see if wire strands are broken.
- ⇒ Have defective Bowden cables replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

#### 7.5.10.3 Checking the derailleur gears

- 1 Check that there is clearance between the chain tensioner and spokes.
- ⇒ If there is no clearance or the chain scrapes against the spokes or tyres, contact your specialist dealer.
- 2 Check that there is clearance between the chain or rear derailleur and spokes.
- ⇒ If there is no clearance or the chain scrapes against the spokes, contact your specialist dealer.

## 7.5.11 Adjusting gear shift

### 7.5.11.1 ROHLOFF hub

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Check whether the shift cable tension is set in such a way that there is a perceptible play of around 5 mm when the shift handle is turned.
- 2 Adjust the shift cable tension by turning the tension adjuster.
  - ⇒ Unscrew the tension adjuster to increase the shift cable tension.
  - ⇒ Tighten the tension adjuster to decrease the shift cable tension.

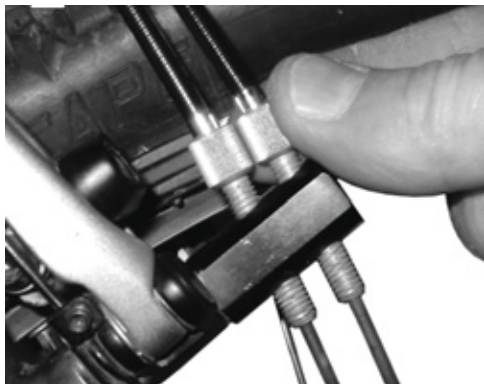


Figure 158: The tension adjuster on Rohloff hub versions with internal switch control is located on the tension counter support



Figure 159: The tension adjuster on Rohloff hub versions with external switch control is located on the cable box positioned on the left-hand side

- 3 If the marking and numbers on the shift handle do no longer coincide after the gear shift is adjusted, tighten one of the tension adjusters and screw out the other tension adjuster to the same extent.

## 7.5.12 Bowden-cable-operated gear shift, single-cable

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ▶ Adjust the play on the adjusting sleeves on the shifter housing to ensure a smooth gear shift.

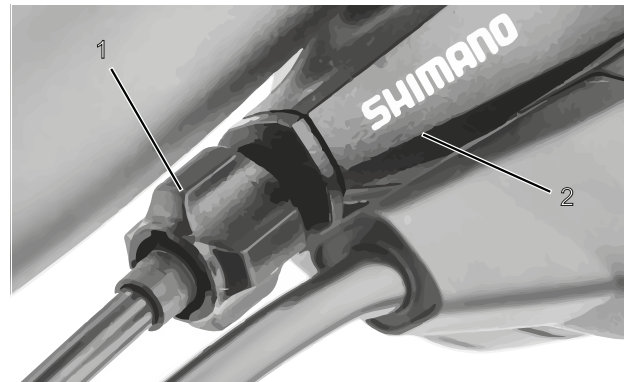


Figure 160: Adjusting sleeve (1) for the single-cable, Bowden-cable-operated gear shift with shifter housing (2), example

## 7.5.13 Bowden-cable-operated gear shift, dual-cable

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ▶ For a smooth gear shift, set the adjusting sleeves underneath the chain stay on the frame.
- ▶ The shift cable has around 1 mm play when it is pulled out gently.

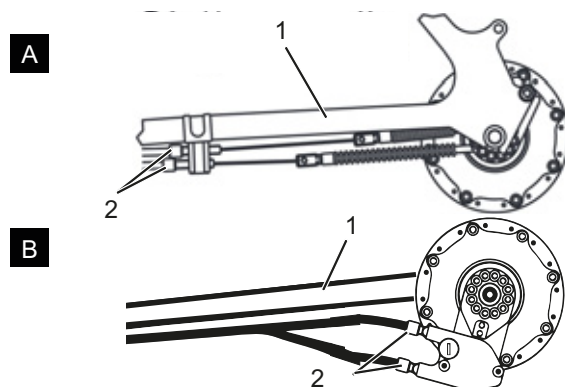


Figure 161: Adjusting sleeves (2) on two alternative versions (A and B) of a dual-cable, Bowden-cable-operated gear shift on the chain stay (1)



### 7.5.14 Bowden-cable-operated twist grip, dual-cable

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ▶ For a smooth gear shift, set the adjusting sleeves on the shifter housing.
- ⇒ There is noticeable play of 2 to 5 mm (1/2 gear) when you turn the twist grip.

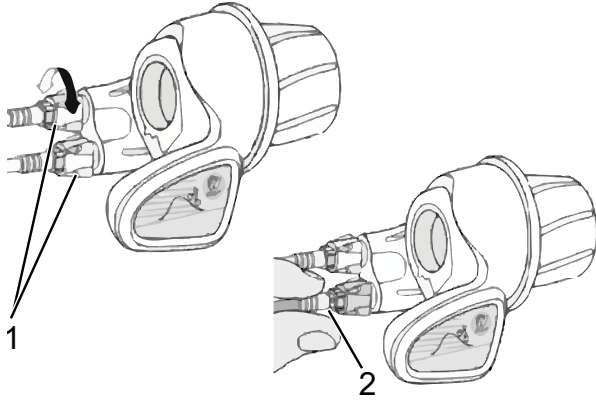


Figure 162: Twist grip with adjusting sleeves (1) and play in the gear shift (2)

### 7.5.15 Checking kickstand stability

- 1 Place the pedelec on a slight elevation of 5 cm.
  - 2 Extend kickstand.
  - 3 Jolt pedelec to check stability.
- ⇒ If the pedelec topples over, tighten screws or change height of the kickstand.

## 8 Maintenance

### 8.1 Initial inspection

#### After 200 km or 4 weeks after purchase

Vibrations produced while riding can cause screws and springs that were tightened during manufacture of the pedelec to settle or come loose.

- ▶ Arrange an appointment for the initial inspection directly when purchasing the pedelec.
- ▶ Have the initial inspection entered and stamped in the maintenance book.



- ▶ Carrying out the initial inspection, see Section 8.4.

### 8.2 Maintenance

#### every six months

You must have your specialist dealer perform maintenance every six months as a minimum. This is the only way to ensure that the pedelec remains safe and fully functional.

Maintenance tasks require technical expertise, special tools and special lubricants. The pedelec may become damaged if the stipulated maintenance intervals and procedures are not carried out. This is why only specialist dealers may carry out maintenance.

- ▶ Contact your specialist dealer and arrange an appointment.
- ▶ Enter and stamp maintenance tasks in the maintenance book.



- ▶ Perform maintenance.

### 8.3 Component-specific maintenance tasks

High-quality components require extra maintenance. Maintenance tasks require technical expertise, special tools and special lubricants. The pedelec may become damaged if the stipulated maintenance intervals and procedures are not carried out. This is why only specialist dealers may carry out maintenance.

Correct maintenance on the fork not only guarantees a long service life, but also ensures optimal performance.

Each maintenance interval shows the maximum cycling hours for the required type of maintenance that the component manufacturer recommends.

- ▶ Optimise performance with shorter maintenance intervals, depending on use, terrain and environmental conditions.



- ▶ Enter any components with extra maintenance requirements with their corresponding maintenance intervals into the maintenance book when the pedelec is purchased.
- ▶ Inform the buyer of the additional maintenance schedule.
- ▶ Enter and stamp maintenance tasks in the maintenance book.

Suspension fork maintenance intervals		
<b>Suntour suspension fork</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Maintenance 1</b>	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 2	Every 100 hours
<b>FOX suspension fork</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
<b>RockShox suspension fork</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Maintenance of stanchions for:</b> Paragon™, XC™ 28, XC 30, 30™, Judy®, Recon™, Sektor™, 35™*, Bluto™, REBA®, SID®, RS-1™, Revelation™, PIKE®, Lyrik™, Yari™, BoXXer	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Maintenance of spring and damper unit for:</b> Paragon, XC 28, XC 30,30 (2015 and earlier), Recon (2015 and earlier), Sektor (2015 and earlier), Bluto (2016 and earlier), Revelation (2017 and earlier), REBA (2016 and earlier), SID (2016 and earlier), RS-1 (2017 and earlier), BoXXer (2018 and earlier)	Every 100 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance of spring and damper unit for: 30 (2016+), Judy (2018+), Recon (2016+), Sektor (2016+), 35 (2020+)*, Revelation (2018+), Bluto (2017+), REBA (2017+), SID (2017+), RS-1 (2018+), PIKE (2014+), Lyrik (2016+), Yari (2016+), BoXXer (2019+)	Every 200 hours

Maintenance intervals for suspension seat post		
<b>by.schulz suspension seat post</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	After the first 250 km; every 1,500 km after that
<b>Suntour suspension seat post</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 100 hours or once a year
<b>eightpins suspension seat post</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean wiper	20 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean slide bushing	40 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip	100 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Seal service for gas pressure spring	200 hours
<b>RockShox dropper post</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Venting of remote control lever and/or maintenance of lower seat post unit for: Reverb™ A1/A2/B1, Reverb Stealth A1/A2/B1/C1*	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Detach lower seat post, clean brass pins, check and replace if necessary and apply new grease for Reverb AXS™ A1*	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Venting of remote control lever and/or maintenance of lower seat post unit for: Reverb B1, Reverb Stealth B1/C1*, Reverb AXS™ A1*	Every 200 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb A1/A2, Reverb Stealth A1/A2	Every 200 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb B1, Reverb Stealth B1	Every 400 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb AXS™ A1*, Reverb Stealth C1*	Every 600 hours
<b>FOX suspension seat post</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
<b>All other suspension seat posts</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 100 hours

Maintenance intervals for rear frame damper		
<b>RockShox rear frame damper</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service air chamber assembly	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service damper and spring	Every 200 hours
<b>FOX rear frame damper</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
<b>Suntour rear frame damper</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete shock absorber service including damper reassembly and air seal replacement	Every 100 hours

Maintenance intervals for hub		
<b>SHIMANO 11-speed hub</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Internal oil change and maintenance	1,000 km after start of use, then every 2 years or 2,000 km
<b>All other SHIMANO gear hubs</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lubricate internal components	Once a year or every 2,000 km
<b>ROHLOFF Speedhub 500/14</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean cable box and grease cable drum interior	Every 500 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Oil change	Every 5,000 km or at least once a year
<b>Pinion</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 1 Check drive elements and replace if necessary Clean cable pulley, slide surfaces and gear box interior, epicyclic wheels, etc. thoroughly and grease generously	Every 500 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 2 Replace chain rings and change oil	Every 10,000 km

 **WARNING**
**Injury due to damaged brakes**

Special tools and specialist knowledge are required to repair the brakes. Incorrect or unauthorised assembly can damage the brakes. This may lead to an accident with serious injuries.

- ▶ Only specialist dealers may carry out repairs on brakes.
- ▶ Only carry out work or changes, such as dismantling, sanding or painting, which are permitted and described in the brake operating instructions.

**Injury to the eyes**

Problems may arise if the settings are not made properly and you may sustain serious injuries as a result.

- ▶ Always wear safety glasses during maintenance work.

 **CAUTION**
**Crash and falling caused by unintentional activation**

There is a risk of injury if the drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery before maintenance.

**Crash caused by material fatigue**

If the service life of a component has expired, the component may suddenly fail. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Have the specialist dealer carry out basic cleaning of the pedelec every six months, preferably at the same time as the required servicing work.

 **CAUTION**
**Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances**

The brake system contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

**Notice**

The motor is maintenance-free and only qualified specialist personnel may open it.

- ▶ Never open the motor.

**8.4 Carry out initial inspection**

Vibration produced while riding can cause screws and springs that were tightened during manufacture of the pedelec to settle or come loose.

- ▶ Check quick release system is fixed in position.
- ▶ Check all tightening torques of screws and screw connections.

Incorrectly fastened screws may come loose due to impact. The stem may no longer be firmly fixed in its position as a result. This will cause a crash with injuries.

Check the handlebars and the stem quick release system are firmly in position after the first two hours of riding.



## 8.5 Maintenance instructions

Complying with these maintenance instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

### Diagnosis and documentation of current status

Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
<b>Chassis</b>							
Frame	Once a month	Dirt	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Servicing	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.1</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check for damage – fracture, scratches	Section 8.6.1	...	O.K.	Damage detected	Take pedelec out of service, new frame as specified in parts list
Carbon frame (optional)	Once a month	Dirt	<a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>	...	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Servicing	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.1</a>	O.K.	No wax	Wax
	6 months	Damage to paintwork	Section 8.6.1.1	...	O.K.	Damage to paintwork	Apply paint
	6 months	Damage from impact	Section 8.6.1.1	...	O.K.	Damage from impact	Take pedelec out of service, new frame as specified in parts list
RockShox Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	See Rock-Shox component maintenance instructions	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Air chamber assembly group, damper and spring.	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
FOX Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Send to FOX	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
Suntour Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	See Suntour component maintenance instructions	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Complete shock absorber service including damper reassembly and air seal replace-	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
<b>Steering system</b>							
Handlebars	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.6</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Wax	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.7</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check mount fastening	<a href="#">Section 7.5.5</a>	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary
Stem	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.5</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Wax	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.6</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check mount fastening	<a href="#">Section 7.5.4</a> and Section 8.6.4	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if necessary



Components	Fre-quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept-ance	Rejection	
Handles	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.7</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care for	<a href="#">Section 7.4.8</a>	...	O.K.	Untreated	Talcum powder
	before each ride	Wear; check if fastened securely	<a href="#">Section 7.1.11</a>	...	O.K.	Missing, wobbles	Retighten screws, new handles and coverings as specified in parts list
Steering headset	6 months	Clean and check for damage	...	Clean, lubricate and adjust	O.K.	Unclean	Clean and lubricate
Fork (rigid)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	Dismount, check, lubricate, refit	...	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Carbon fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Suntour suspension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
FOX suspension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Send to FOX	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
RockShox suspension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Spinner suspension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer  Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
<b>Wheel</b>							
Wheel	before each ride	Concentricity	<a href="#">Section 7.1.7</a>	...	O.K.	Not straight	Re-mount wheel
	6 months	Assembly	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Tyres	Once a month	Cleaning	<a href="#">Section 7.3.10</a>	...	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	once a week	Tyre pressure	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.1</a>	...	O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/too high	Adjust tyre pressure
	10 days	Wear	<a href="#">Section 7.3.10</a>	...	O.K.	Worn profile	New tyre as specified in the parts list



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Rims	6 months	Wax	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.10</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Wear	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>	...	O.K.	Defective rim	New rim as specified in the parts list
	once a month	Wear on brake surface	<a href="#">Section 7.5.2.6</a>	...	O.K.	Worn brake surface	New rim as specified in the parts list
Spokes	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.11</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	3 months	Check tension	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>	...	O.K.	Loose, tension varies	Re-tension spokes or new spokes as specified in parts list
	6 months	Check rim hooks	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.3</a>	...	O.K.	Twisted rim hooks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Spoke nipples	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.11</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Wax	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.13</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
Nipple holes	6 months	Check for cracks	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.4</a>	...	O.K.	Cracks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Nipple well	Once a year	Check for cracks	<a href="#">Section 7.5.1.5</a>	...	O.K.	Cracks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Hub	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.12</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.12</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
Hub with cone bearing (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.12</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.12</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
	6 months	Check mount fastening	#	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary
	Once a year	Adjust	...		O.K.	Not adjusted	New position
Hub gear (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.12</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.12</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
	6 months	Check mount fastening	#	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary
	6 months	Functional check	<a href="#">Section 7.5.9.2</a>	...		incorrect switching	Readjust hub
<b>Saddle and seat post</b>							
Saddle	Once a month	Cleaning		<a href="#">Section 7.3.9</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Check mount fastening	<a href="#">Section 7.5.6</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Leather saddle (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.9.1</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.11</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Leather wax
	6 months	Check mount fastening	<a href="#">Section 7.5.6</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws





Components	Fre-quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept-ance	Rejection	
Seat post	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.8</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care for	...		O.K.	Untreated	Leather wax
	6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	...	Section 8.6.8	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
Carbon seat post (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.8</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.9.2</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Assembly paste
	6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	...	Section 8.6.8.1	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged
Suspension seat post (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	#	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care for	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.9.1</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Oils
	100 hours or 6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	Section 8.6.8	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
by.schulz suspension seat post (optional)	After the first 250 km; every 1500 km after that	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film, lubricate	Section 8.6.8.2	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged
Suntour suspension seat post	Every 100 hours or once a year	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film, lubricate	Section 8.6.8.3	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged
eightpins NGS2 Suspension seat post	20 hours	Refill oil	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.19</a>	O.K.	No oil	Refill oil
	20 hours	Clean wiper	...		O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	40 hours	Cleaning the slide bushing	...		O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	100 hours	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip	...		O.K.	No replace-ment	Replace
	200 hours	Seal service for gas pressure spring	...		O.K.	No service	Carry out the service
eightpins H01 Suspension seat post	20 hours	Refill oil	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.19</a>	O.K.	No oil	Refill oil
	20 hours	Clean wiper	...		O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	40 hours	Cleaning the slide bushing	...		O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	100 hours	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip	...		O.K.	No replace-ment	Replace
	200 hours	Seal service for gas pressure spring	...		O.K.	No service	Carry out the service



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
RockShox suspension seat post	50 hours	Venting	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
	50 hours	Cleaning	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
	200 hours	Venting	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
	200 hours	Complete mainte- nance	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
	400 hours	Complete mainte- nance	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
	600 hours	Complete mainte- nance	...	See manufac- turer	O.K.		
FOX suspen- sion seat post	Every 125 hours or once a year	Complete mainte- nance	See manufac- turer	At the manufac- turer FOX	...	...	
<b>Safety guards</b>							
Belt or chain guards	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Motor cover	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Brake system</b>							
Brake lever	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake fluid	6 months	Check fluid level	Depending on time of year	...	O.K.	Too little	Top up brake fluid; <i>take Pedelec out of service</i> if damaged; new brake hoses
Brake linings	6 months	Brake linings, brake discs and rims	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims
Back-pedal brake braking armature	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake system	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Lighting system</b>							
Light cabling	6 months	Connections, correct wiring	Check	...	O.K.	Cable defec- tive, no light	New cabling
Rear light	6 months	Side light	Functional check	...	O.K.	No constant light	New rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Front light	6 months	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check	...	O.K.	No constant light	New front light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Reflectors	6 months	All complete, state, fastening	Check	...	O.K.	Damaged or not all complete	New reflectors



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Drive/gear shift							
Chain/ cassette/ pinion/chain- ring	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as speci- fied in parts list
Chain guard/ spoke guard	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
Bottom bracket axle/ crank	6 months	Check mount fastening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pedals	6 months	Check mount fastening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shifter	6 months	Check mount fastening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shift cables	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
Front derail- leur	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Gear shift diffi- cult or not possible	Adjust
Rear derail- leur	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Gear shift diffi- cult or not possible	Adjust
Electric drive							
On-board computer	6 months	Check for damage	Check for damage	...	O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart, test battery, new software or new on-board computer, <i>decommissioning</i> ,
Electric drive control panel	6 months	Check drive for damage	Check drive for damage	...	O.K.	No response	Restart; contact control panel manu- facturer, new control panel
Tachometer	6 months	Calibration	Speed meas- urement	...	O.K.	Pedelec travel- ling 10 % too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
Cabling	6 months	Visual inspection	Visual inspec- tion	...	O.K.	Failure in system, damage, kinked cables	New cabling
Recharge- able battery	6 months	First examination	see Section Assembly	...	O.K.	Error message	Contact battery manu- facturer; <i>take out of service</i> , new battery
Battery mount	6 months	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
Motor	6 months	Visual inspection and mount	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor, contact motor manu- facturer, new motor; <i>take out of service</i>
Software	6 months	Check version	Check soft- ware version	...	In latest version	Not latest version	Import update



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Miscellaneous							
Pannier rack	before each ride	Stability	<a href="#">Section 7.1.5</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Firm
	Once a month	Dirt	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Servicing	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.3</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check fastening and paint protection film	<a href="#">Section 8.5.2</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
Kickstand	Once a month	Dirt	...	<a href="#">Section 7.3.4</a>	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Servicing	...	<a href="#">Section 7.4.5</a>	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Attachment	<a href="#">Section 7.5.15</a>	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
	6 months	Stability	<a href="#">Section 7.5.15</a>	...	O.K.	Tips over	Change kickstand height
Bell	before each ride	Sound	Functional check <a href="#">Section 7.1.10</a>	...	O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
Attachments (optional)	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws

### Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly/inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
Brake system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
Gear shift under operating load	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
Electric drive	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate defective part in electric drive and correct
Lighting system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
Test ride	6 months	Functional check	No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct



### 8.5.1 Servicing the frame

- 1 Check frame for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New frame as specified in the parts list.

#### 8.5.1.1 Servicing the carbon frame

You need to distinguish between scratches on the paintwork and impacts if the carbon frame paintwork is damaged.

- ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
- ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged.

#### Damage to paintwork

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

#### Damage from impact

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact damage. The frame may break even under light stress.

- 1 Take pedelec out of service.
- 2 Send frame to a fibre composite repair company or purchase new frame as specified in the parts list.

### 8.5.2 Checking the pannier rack

Scratches, cracks and breaks may appear on the pannier rack caused by the panniers and cargo boxes.

- 1 Examine pannier rack for scratches, cracks and breaks.
- ⇒ Replace damaged pannier racks.
- ⇒ If the paint protection film is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.

### 8.5.3 Servicing axle with quick release



#### Crash caused by unfastened quick release

A faulty or incorrectly installed quick release may become caught in the brake disc and block the wheel. This will cause a crash.

- ▶ Install the front wheel quick release lever on the opposite side to the brake disc.

#### Crash caused by faulty or incorrectly installed quick release

The brake disc becomes very hot during operation. Parts of the quick release may become damaged as a result. The quick release comes loose. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ The front wheel quick release lever and the brake disc must be situated on opposite sides.

#### Crash caused by incorrectly set clamping force

Excessively high clamping force will damage the quick release and cause it to lose its function.

Insufficient clamping force will cause a detrimental transmission of force. The suspension fork or the frame may break. This will cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).
- ▶ Only use the clamping lever with the specified set clamping force.

- 1 Undo quick release.
- 2 Fasten quick release.
- 3 Check the position and clamping force of the quick release lever.



- ⇒ The quick release lever is flush with the lower housing.
- ⇒ You should be able to see slight impression on the palm of your hand when you close the quick release lever.



Figure 163: Adjusting the quick release clamping force

- 4 Use a 4 mm hexagon socket spanner to adjust the clamping lever clamping force if required.
- 5 Check the quick release lever position and clamping force again.

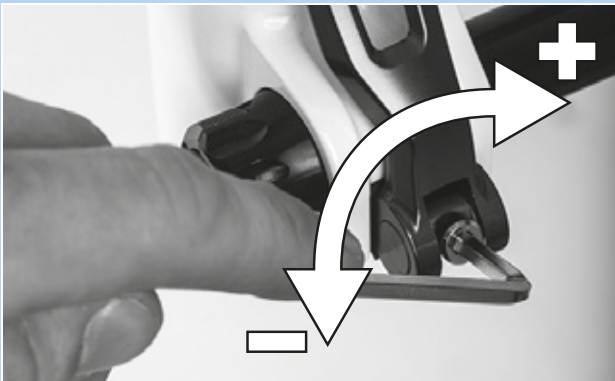


Figure 164: Adjusting the quick release clamping force

## 8.5.4 Maintaining the stem

Incorrectly fastened screws may come loose due to impact. The stem may no longer be firmly fixed in its position as a result. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Check the handlebars and the stem's quick release are firmly in position.

## 8.5.5 Servicing the gear hub

### 8.5.5.1 Adjusting the hub with cone bearing

In the case of hubs with a cone bearing, the bearing shell fixed in the hub cone body rotates with its larger ball bearing surfaces around the inner bearing cone resting against the fork end. The outer bearing shell rotating around the stationary bearing cone is subject to considerably more evenly distributed loads thanks to its larger ball running surface.

- 1 Attach a small, red colour marking on the lock nut.
  - 2 Turn the wheel axle 40° to 90° every 1,000 to 2,000 km.
- ⇒ The bearing cone is subject to evenly distributed loads.



### 8.5.6 Servicing the steering headset

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Clean steering headset. If it is very dirty, flush the bearing with cleaning agents such as WD-40 or Karamba.
- 3 Check steering headset for damage.
  - ⇒ If the steering headset is damaged, replace steering headset as specified in the parts list.
- 4 Grease steering headset and bearing seat with highly viscous, water-repellent grease (e.g. Dura Ace special grease by SHIMANO).
- 5 Re-fit fork with steering headset as per fork instructions.

### 8.5.7 Servicing the fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

#### **WARNING**

##### Injury due to explosion

The air chamber is pressurised. If the air system in a faulty suspension fork is maintained, it can explode and cause serious injury.

- ▶ Wear safety goggles, protective gloves and safety clothing when assembling or carrying out maintenance on the bicycle.
- ▶ Release the air for the air chambers. Detach all air insert fitments.
- ▶ Never service or dismantle a suspension fork if it has not completely rebounded.

#### **CAUTION**

##### Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances

The suspension fork contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
  - ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- 3 Clean inside and exterior.
- 4 Grease fork.
- 5 Install fork.



### 8.5.7.1 Servicing the carbon suspension fork

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- 3 You need to distinguish between scratches on the paintwork and impacts if the carbon suspension fork paintwork is damaged.
  - ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
  - ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged.

#### Damage to paintwork

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

#### Damage from impact

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact damage. The fork may break even under light stress.

- ▶ Take pedelec out of service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- ⇒ The fork must be free from any defects.
- 4 Clean inside and exterior.
  - 5 Grease fork.
  - 6 Install fork.

### 8.5.7.2 Servicing the suspension fork

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
  - ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- 3 Dismantle suspension fork.
- 4 Lubricate dust seals and slide bushings.
- 5 Check torques.
- 6 Clean inside and exterior.
- 7 Grease fork.
- 8 Install fork.
- 9 Adjust suspension fork (see Section 6.3.14).





## 8.5.8 Servicing seat post



### WARNING

#### Intoxication from lubrication oil

The lubrication oil for eightpins seat posts is toxic if touched or inhaled.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when working with lubrication oil.
- ▶ Lubricate seat post in the open air or in a well-ventilated room only.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with lubrication oil. Wear nitrile gloves when lubricating, cleaning and servicing the vehicle.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the seat post is serviced.

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
- 2 Clean seat post on the inside and outside.
- 3 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and breaks.
  - ⇒ Replaced damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
  - ⇒ If the paint protection film is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.
- 4 Fit seat post as per height specifications in the pedelec pass.

### 8.5.8.1 Servicing the carbon seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

You need to distinguish between scratches on the paintwork and impacts if the carbon seat post paintwork is damaged.

- ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
- ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged.

#### Damage to paintwork

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

#### Damage from impact

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact damage. The carbon seat post may break even under light stress.

- 1 Take pedelec out of service.
- 2 New carbon seat post as specified in the parts list.



### 8.5.8.2 by.schulz suspension seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
  - 2 Remove safety and protective cover.
  - 3 Clean seat post on the inside and outside.
  - 4 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and breaks.
- ⇒ Replaced damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
- ⇒ If the paint protection film is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.
- 5 Lubricate screws in the parallel suspension.
  - 6 Reinsert seat post as per height specifications in the pedelec pass. Check screws for correct tightening torques.

□	<b>Tightening torque G1</b> M8 seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	20-24 Nm 3 Nm
---	--	------------------

□	<b>Tightening torque G2</b> M6 seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	12-14 Nm 3 Nm
---	--	------------------

- 7 Put on safety and protective cover.

### 8.5.8.3 Suntour suspension seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
  - 2 Remove safety and protective cover.
  - 3 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and breaks.
- ⇒ Replaced damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
- ⇒ If the paint protection film is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.
- 4 Undo pre-tensioning adjuster and take out steel spring.
  - 5 Clean seat post on inside and outside.
  - 6 Grease seat post on inside with SR SUNTOUR no. 9170-001.
  - 7 Lubricate pressure roller with bike chain oil.
- ▶ Lubricate articulated joints in parallel suspension with bike chain oil.



Figure 165: SR Suntour suspension seat post lubrication points

- 8 Reinsert seat post as per height specifications in the pedelec pass.
- 9 Check screws for correct tightening torques.

□	<b>Tightening torque</b> Seat clamping screw M5 fixing grub screws	15-18 Nm 3 Nm
---	--	------------------

- 10 Put on safety and protective cover.



### 8.5.8.4 eightpins NGS2 seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

#### Removing the seat post

- 1 Use a 2.5 mm hex key to turn the height adjustment 45° anti-clockwise and move to the “Open position”.



Figure 166: Moving height adjustment to the “Open position”

- 2 Activate operating lever. Pull seat post upwards at the same time and remove completely.



Figure 167: Pulling the seat post out

- 3 Activate operating lever. Hold Bowden cable fastener and pull or tilt forwards. Remove outer sleeve from the seat post remote control.



Figure 168: Removing the cartridge

- 4 Use a 5 mm to undo Postpin axle and pull out.



Figure 169: Undoing the Postpin axle

- 5 Pull cartridge from the piston rod while pushing the outer sleeve into the frame at the same time to help.

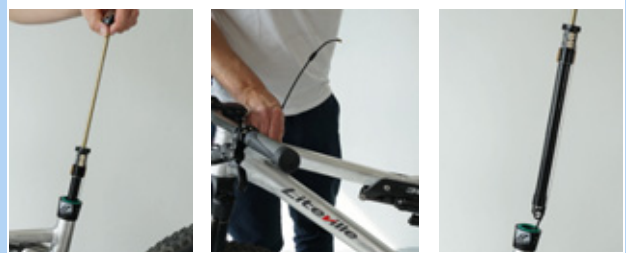


Figure 170: Pulling the cartridge out

- 6 Hold the cartridge with one hand at the height of the mechanism and pull the Bowden cable straight down with the other.
- 7 Hold the white actuating slide in the locking mechanism with your thumb.
- 8 Carefully push the Bowden cable upwards with the other hand and detach it.

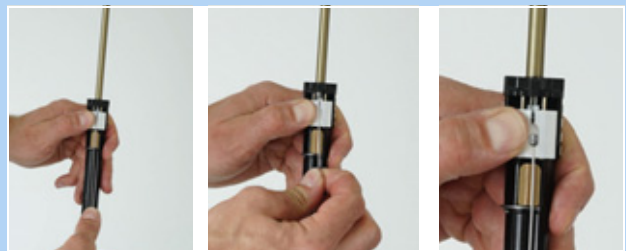


Figure 171: Detaching the Bowden cable

#### Notice

- ▶ Never pull Bowden cable forwards at an angle.

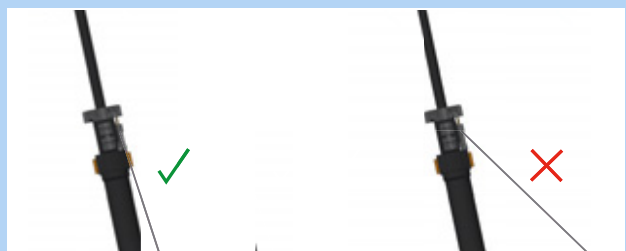


Figure 172: Bowden cable position



- 9 Pull out the outer sleeve end cap from the counter support on the Postpin interface on the seat post.

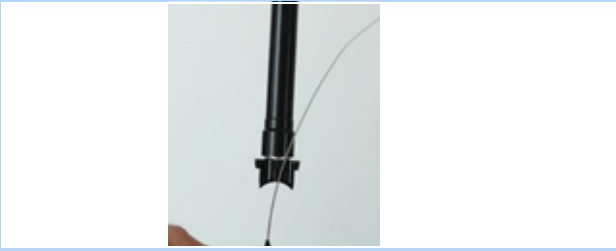


Figure 173: Pulling the end cap out

### Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to remove attachment screw on the outer sleeve.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pulling upwards with your hand.
- 3 Pull slide bushing tube out of the seat tube.



Figure 174: Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

### Caring for the outer sleeve

- 1 Detach spring washer or outer sealing ring.



Figure 175: Removed spring washer

- 2 Carefully remove the wiper from the groove.



Figure 176: Removing the wiper

- 3 Use a small, sharp object to look for and remove the end of the felt ring.
- 4 Carefully take out the felt ring.
- 5 Remove felt ring.
- 6 Clean or replace felt ring.



Figure 177: Removing the felt ring

- 7 Clean inside of outer sleeve with a cloth.

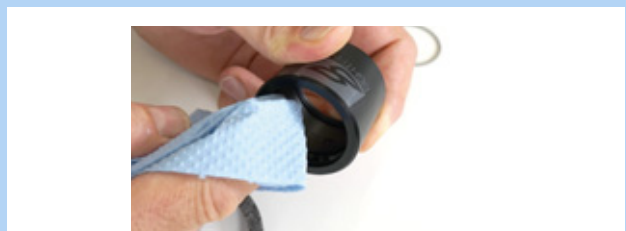


Figure 178: Cleaning the outer sleeve



- 8 Carefully re-insert dry felt ring with one end in the designated groove.
- 9 Unfurl felt ring within the outer sleeve, so that it lies on the groove.
- 10 Carefully press felt ring into the groove by hand. Ensure that both ends are fully pressed in and meet and that they do not overlap and are not twisted.



Figure 179: Inserting the felt ring

- 11 Insert cleaned or new wiper in the upper groove.
- 12 Stretch spring washer over the wiper.

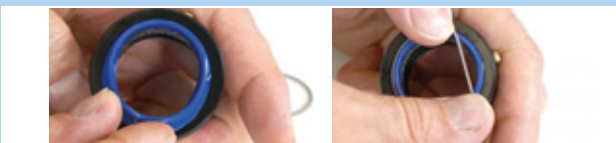


Figure 180: inserting and fastening the wiper

### Cleaning the slide bushing

- 1 Clean the slide bushing tube with a damp cloth.

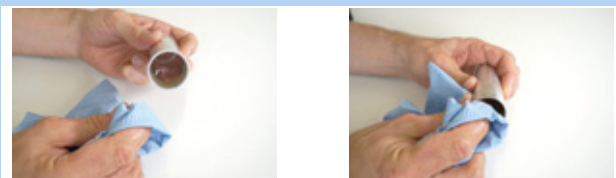


Figure 181: Cleaning the slide bushing tube

### Notice

- ▶ Do not squash. The slide bushing tube wall is very thin.

### Increasing the air pressure

- 1 Use 3 mm hex spanner to unscrew valve cap.



Figure 182: Unscrewing the valve cap

- 2 Screw valve adapter into mounting interface from below.



Figure 183: Screwing the valve adapter in

- 3 Use compression pump to pump the cartridge up to 24 bar.



Figure 184: Pumping the cartridge up

### Notice

Screwing in the valve adapter will not open the valve. No pressure is displayed. The pressure is displayed when you start pumping.

- 4 Unscrew pump and valve adapter.



- 5 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to screw the valve lid back on and tighten with a maximum of 0.5 Nm.



Figure 185: Fastening the cartridge valve lid

### Notice

- The cartridge is not airtight without the valve lid.

### Setting the slipper clutch

- 1 Use 3 mm hex spanner to unscrew valve cap.

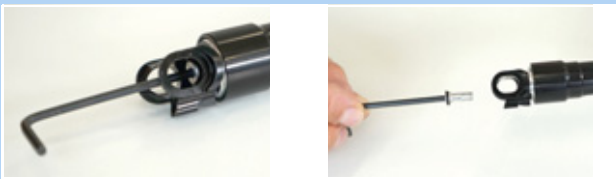


Figure 186: Unscrewing the valve cap

- 2 Secure the mounting interface against twisting with a 24 mm open-end spanner.



Figure 187: Securing against twisting

- 3 Set the torque to 18 Nm with a torque wrench and a 6 mm hex bit with a shaft length of at least 25 mm. Rotate clockwise.



Figure 188: Setting in a clockwise direction

- 4 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to screw the valve lid on and tighten with a maximum of 0.5 Nm.

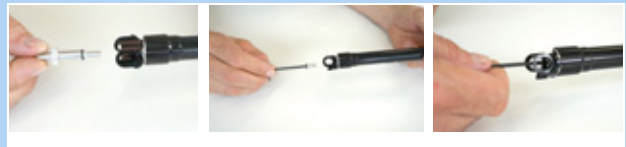


Figure 189: Fastening the cartridge valve lid

### Notice

- The cartridge is not airtight without the valve lid.



### installing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Carefully push slide bushing tube into the seat tube.
- 2 Press outer sleeve downwards with your hand.
- 3 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the attachment screw on the outer sleeve.



Figure 190: Fitting the slide bushing and outer sleeve

### Fitting the seat post

- 1 Attach the outer sleeve end cap in the counterholder on the seat post frame interface.



Figure 191: Attaching the end cap

- 2 Use both thumbs to push white activation slider downwards and hold with one thumb.



Figure 192: Pushing the white activation slider downwards

- 3 Attach Bowden cable with the nipple to the bracket for the Bowden cable.



Figure 193: Correct and incorrect Bowden cable

### Notice

- ▶ Never pull Bowden cable forwards at an angle.

- 4 Carefully push cartridge into the seat tube. Pull the Bowden cable out of the frame to help.



Figure 194: Fastening the cartridge valve lid

### Notice

- ▶ Before continuing with installation, ensure that the Bowden cable is fed into the middle of the longitudinal guide. If the Bowden cable is off-centre, it will be pinched by the tube.

- 5 Look at the frame interface through the hole in the Postpin. Push the cartridge down until the Postpin mounting interface on the seat post reaches the Postpin interface on the frame.

- 6 If necessary, turn the seat post slightly and push it to the correct position so that the Postpin axle can be inserted.



Figure 195: Fastening the cartridge valve lid

- 7 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to screw in Postpin axle and fasten slightly.

- 8 Use torque spanner to tighten Postpin axle with 8 Nm.

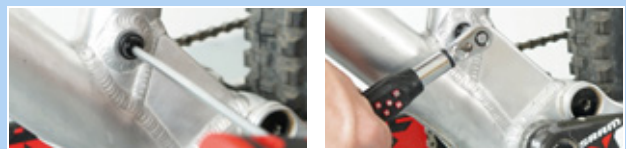


Figure 196: Fastening the Postpin axle



- 9** Carefully insert slide bushing tube into the seat tube.



Figure 197: Inserting the slide bushing tube into the seat tube

- 10** Place outer sleeve on the seat tube and push downwards firmly.



Figure 198: Attaching the outer sleeve

- 11** Turn the outer sleeve so that the outer sleeve mounting hole is aligned with the fastening hole in the frame.
- 12** Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the M5 attachment screw into the outer sleeve.
- 13** Tighten screw gently with a maximum torque of 0.5 Nm.
- ⇒ The screw must easily screw into the outer sleeve without any resistance. If this is not the case, the hole in the frame is not aligned with the mounting hole in the outer sleeve. Turn outer sleeve into the right position.



Figure 199: Fastening the outer sleeve

- 14** Feed height adjustment clamp into the seat tube.

- ⇒ The two height adjustment clamp guides are in the longitudinal grooves inside the seat post.

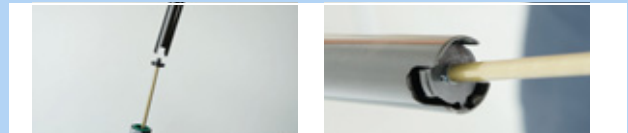


Figure 200: Feeding the height adjustment clamp in

- 15** Push the seat post carefully downwards and feed into the wiper.

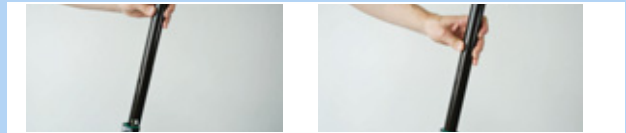


Figure 201: Pushing the seat post downwards

## Notice

- ▶ Never let the seat post tube collide with the piston rod. There is a risk of scratches and damage to the piston rod. This will causes loss of air.

- 16** Move operating lever and press seat post downwards to the required height as per the values in the pedelec pass.



Figure 202: Setting the seat post height

- 17** Turn the height adjustment mechanism 45° in a clockwise direction and place in the "Closed position".



Figure 203: Closing the height adjustment





### 8.5.8.5 eightpins H01 seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

#### Removing the seat post

- 1 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to unscrew the Postpin axle.

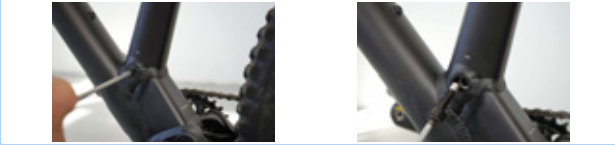


Figure 204: Undoing the seat post

- ▶ Detach Bowden cable from the on-bar remote control on the seat post.
- ▶ Detach the operating lever from the handlebars in the case of under-bar-remote control on the seat post. Activate operating lever. Hold Bowden cable fastener and pull or tilt forwards.

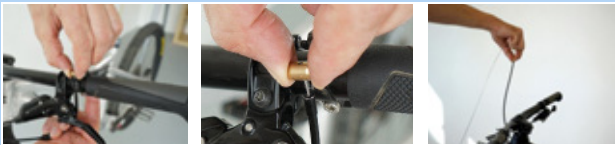


Figure 205: Unfastening the remote control

- 2 Pull seat post slowly out of the frame.

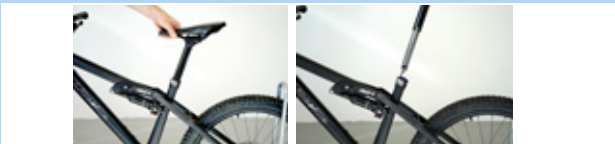


Figure 206: Removing the seat post

- 3 Pull out the special end cap for the outer sleeve from the bracket.
- 4 Detach the Bowden cable head from the hydraulic activation lever bracket.
- 5 If necessary, operate the lever by hand to make more space for detaching it.



Figure 207: Removing the Bowden cable

#### Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to remove attachment screw on the outer sleeve.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pulling upwards with your hand.
- 3 Pull slide bushing tube out of the seat tube.



Figure 208: Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

#### Caring for the outer sleeve

- 1 Push the blue wiper towards the edge.
- 2 Detach the seal lip ring.



Figure 209: Detaching the seal lip ring

- 3 Detach spring washer or outer sealing ring.



Figure 210: Removed spring washer



- 4** Carefully remove the wiper from the groove.



Figure 211: Removing the wiper

- 5** Use a small, sharp object to look for and remove the end of the felt ring.
- 6** Carefully take out the felt ring.
- 7** Remove felt ring.
- 8** Clean or replace felt ring.



Figure 212: Removing the felt ring

- 9** Clean inside of outer sleeve with a cloth.

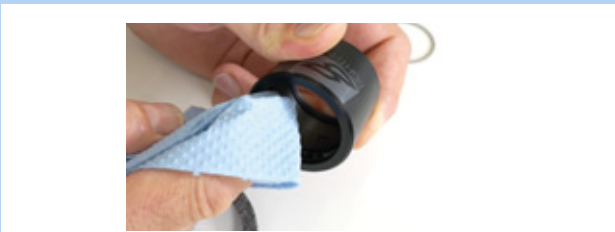


Figure 213: Cleaning the outer sleeve

- 10** Carefully re-insert dry felt ring with one end in the designated groove.
- 11** Unfurl felt ring within the outer sleeve, so that it lies on the groove.
- 12** Carefully press felt ring into the groove by hand. Ensure that both ends are fully pressed in and meet and that they do not overlap and are not twisted.



Figure 214: Inserting the felt ring

- 13** Insert cleaned or new wiper in the upper groove.

- 14** Stretch spring washer over the wiper.

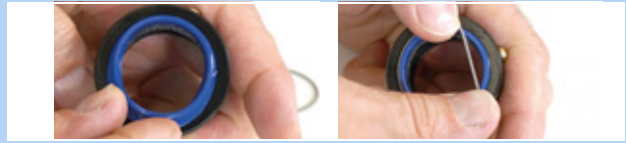


Figure 215: inserting and fastening the wiper



### Clean slide bushing

- 1 Clean the slide bushing tube with a damp cloth.

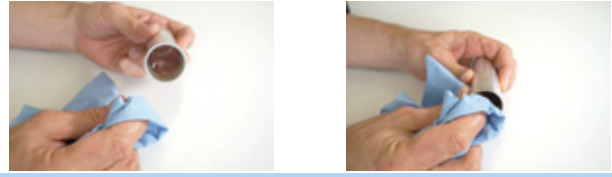


Figure 216: Cleaning the slide bushing tube

### Notice

- ▶ Do not squash. The slide bushing tube wall is very thin.

### Cleaning and lubricating the guide grooves

- 1 Push the operating lever forwards.



Figure 217: Opening the height adjustment

- 2 Pull seat post out with your hand until it will go no further.

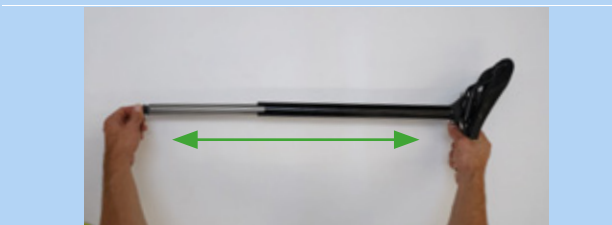


Figure 218: Pulling the seat post out

- 3 Clean the seat post longitudinal grooves with a damp cloth.



Figure 219: Cleaning the longitudinal groove

- 4 Apply grease into the longitudinal groove and on both cross-pieces.



Figure 220: Applying grease

- 5 Push seat post together.

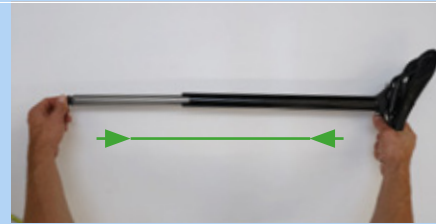


Figure 221: Pushing the seat post together

- 6 Push the height adjustment operating lever backwards.



Figure 222: Closing the height adjustment



### installing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Carefully push slide bushing tube into the seat tube.
- 2 Press outer sleeve downwards with your hand.
- 3 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the attachment screw on the outer sleeve.



Figure 223: Fitting the slide bushing and outer sleeve

### Fitting the seat post

- 1 Attach Bowden cable head to the hydraulic activation lever bracket.
- 2 Push special end cap for the outer sleeve into the holder on the mounting interface.
- 3 Carefully push the seat post into the frame. In doing so, ensure that the wiper and the slide bushing do not become damaged.



Figure 224: Attaching and pushing in the seat post

- 4 Hold the Bowden cable firmly on the handlebars while feeding it in. Carefully pull the end of the Bowden cable from the frame so that the seat post slides downwards unhindered.

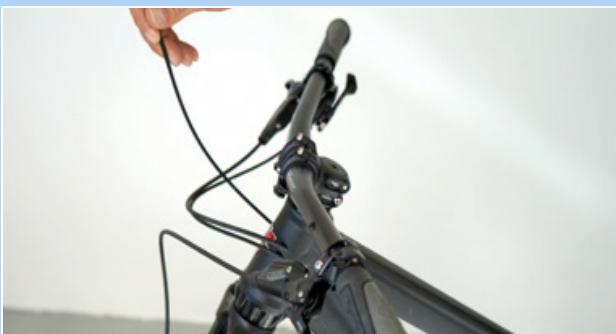


Figure 225: Attaching the end cap

- 5 Look at the frame interface through the hole in the Postpin. Push the seat post down until the Postpin mounting interface on the seat post reaches the Postpin interface on the frame.



Figure 226: Hole in the Postpin interface

- 6 If necessary, turn the seat post slightly and push it to the correct position so that the Postpin axle can be inserted.
- 7 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to screw in Postpin axle and fasten slightly.
- 8 Straighten saddle.
- 9 Use torque spanner to tighten Postpin axle with 8 Nm.

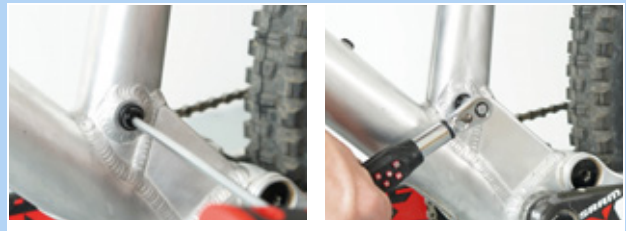


Figure 227: Screwing the seat post into position



## 8.5.9 Rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

### WARNING

#### Injury due to explosion

The air chamber is pressurised. If the air system is serviced in a rear frame damper, it can explode and cause serious injury.

- ▶ Wear safety goggles, protective gloves and safety clothing when assembling or carrying out maintenance on the bicycle.
- ▶ Release the air for the air chambers. Detach all air insert fitments.
- ▶ Never service or dismantle a rear frame damper if it has not completely rebounded.

#### Intoxication from suspension oil

Suspension oil is poisonous to the touch, irritates respiratory tracts and causes cancer, sterility and mutation in germ cells.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when carrying suspension oil.
- ▶ Never perform maintenance when you are pregnant.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the rear frame damper is being serviced.

#### Intoxication from lubrication oil

The lubrication oil for eightpins seat posts is toxic if touched or inhaled.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when working with lubrication oil.
- ▶ Lubricate seat post in the open air or in a well-ventilated room only.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with lubrication oil. Wear nitrile gloves when lubricating, cleaning and servicing the vehicle.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the seat post is serviced.

### CAUTION

#### Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances

The rear frame damper contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

- 1 Dismantle the rear frame damper.
- 2 Clean and inspect its interior and exterior.
- 3 Recondition air springs.
- 4 Replace airtight seals on air springs.
- 5 Change oil.
- 6 Replace dust wipers.



### 8.5.9.1 FOX component-specific maintenance

FOX Service must perform maintenance on suspension forks, rear frame dampers and suspension seat posts.

- ▶ Maintenance includes a complete inspection of interiors/exterior.
- ▶ All dampers are reconditioned.
- ▶ The airtight seals are replaced in air suspension forks.
- ▶ The air spring is reconditioned.
- ▶ The oil is changed.
- ▶ The dust wipers are replaced.

More information at:

[www.foxracingshox.de/service](http://www.foxracingshox.de/service)

## 9 Troubleshooting, fault clearance and repair

### 9.1 Troubleshooting and fault clearance

The components of the drive system are checked constantly and automatically. If an error is detected, an error message appears on the *display*. The drive may be shut off automatically, depending on the type of error.

#### 9.1.1 The drive system or display do not start up

If the display and/or the drive system do not start up, proceed as follows:

- 1 Check whether the battery is switched on. If not, start the battery.
- ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the Battery Level indicator LEDs do not light up.
- 2 If the LEDs on the Battery Level indicator light up, but the drive system does not start, remove the battery.
- 3 Insert the battery.
- 4 Start the drive system.
- 5 If the drive system does not start up, remove the battery.
- 6 Clean all the contacts with a soft cloth.
- 7 Insert the battery.
- 8 Start the drive system.
- 9 If the drive system does not start up, remove the battery.
- 10 Charge battery fully.
- 11 Insert the battery.
- 12 Start the drive system.
- 13 If the drive system won't start, press the **On-Off button (battery)** for at least 8 seconds.
- 14 If the drive system won't start after about 6 seconds, press the **On-Off button (battery)** for at least 2 seconds.
- 15 If the drive system still won't start, contact your specialist dealer.

#### 9.1.2 RD protection reset

The rear derailleur protection function will immediately trigger to protect the system if the pedelec is exposed to a strong impact – due to a fall, for example. The connection between the motor and the link is interrupted instantly, rendering the rear derailleur inoperable.

If you open RD PROTECTION RESET, the connection between the motor and link is re-established and the rear derailleur function reset.

- ✓ The *settings menu* is opened.
- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A (left)** repeatedly until RD PROTECTION RESET is displayed.
- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A (left)**.
- ⇒ There are two selection options:

Display	Function
OK	Rear derailleur reset is in progress
CANCEL	Back to the main menu

Table 55:Rear derailleur reset change options

- ▶ Push **switch Y (left)** or **switch X (left)** briefly until the required function is highlighted.
- ▶ Press the **button (display)** or **switch A (left)**.
- ⇒ The display screen switches back to the start screen.
- ▶ Turn crank.
- ⇒ The connection between the motor and the link is restored.

#### 9.1.3 Warning messages and LEDs

All warning messages and the meaning of the different LEDs are explained in Section 6.2.

## 9.2 Assistance function

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Assistance is not available.	Is the battery charged sufficiently?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check battery charge level.</li> <li>2 Recharge the battery if it is almost flat.</li> </ol>
	Does the rider ride up long inclines in summer weather or with a heavy load for a long time? The battery may be too hot.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Switch off the drive system.</li> <li>2 Wait a moment and then check again.</li> </ol>
	The drive unit (DU-E6100/DU-E6110), the bicycle computer (SC-E6100) or the assistance switch (SW-E6010/SW-E7000) may be connected incorrectly or one or more of them may have a problem.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
	Is the speed too high?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check on-screen indicators.</li> <li>2 The electronic gear assistance is only supported up to a maximum speed of 25 km/h. This is not a malfunction.</li> </ol>
Assistance is not available.	Are you pedalling?	▶ The pedelec is not a motorbike. Push the pedals.
	Is the assistance mode set to [OFF]?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Set the assistance mode to a different level of assistance than [OFF].</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if there is still no assistance.</li> </ol>
	Is the system switched on?	▶ Press the battery On-Off button to switch it on.
The assisted journey distance is too short.	The journey distance can be shorter depending on the road conditions, the gear level and the entire light usage time.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check battery charge level.</li> <li>2 Recharge the battery if it is almost flat.</li> </ol>
	The battery does not perform as well in winter weather.	This is not a malfunction.
	The battery is a consumable. Repeated charging and long periods of use cause the battery to degrade (loss of power).	▶ If the trip distance you can cover with one single charge is very short, replace the battery with a new one.
	Is the battery fully charged?	▶ If the trip distance covered with a fully charged battery has become shorter, the battery may be affected. Replace battery with new one.
It is difficult to pedal.	Are the tyres pumped to an adequate pressure?	▶ Pump up tyres.
	Is the assistance mode set to OFF?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Adjust level of assistance [BOOST].</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if there is still no assistance.</li> </ol>
	The battery charge might be low.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check set level of assistance and battery level.</li> <li>2 If both are O.K. and no assistance is supplied, contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
	Have you switched on the system with your foot on the pedal?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Switch system on again without applying pressure to the pedal.</li> <li>2 Contact your specialist dealer if there is still no assistance.</li> </ol>

Table 56: Level of assistance error solution



### 9.3 Rechargeable battery

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The battery discharges quickly.	The battery may be at the end of its service life.	► Replace battery with new one.
All five battery indicators are continuously lit.	The drive unit firmware version may not be up to date.	► Contact your specialist dealer.
The battery cannot be recharged.	Is the charger mains plug firmly connected to the socket?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Disconnect charger mains plug. Insert the mains plug again.</li> <li>2 Repeat charging process.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if there is still no assistance.</li> </ol>
	Is the charger plug firmly inserted into the battery?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Disconnect charger's charger plug. Insert charger plug again.</li> <li>2 Repeat charging process.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if there is still no assistance.</li> </ol>
	Is the adapter firmly connected to the charger plug or the battery's charging port?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Connect the adapter firmly to the charger plug or the battery charging port.</li> <li>2 Start charging.</li> <li>3 If the battery still won't charge, contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
	Is the battery, the connection terminal for the battery charger, charger adapter or battery dirty?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Wipe with dry cloth to clean the connection terminals.</li> <li>2 Start charging.</li> <li>3 If the battery still won't charge, contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
The battery does not start charging when the charger is connected.	The battery may be at the end of its service life.	► Replace battery with new one.
The battery and charger become hot.	The temperature of the battery or the charger may have exceeded the operating temperature range.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Interrupt charging process.</li> <li>2 Wait a moment.</li> <li>3 Start charging.</li> <li>4 If the battery becomes too hot to touch, there might be a problem with the battery. Contact your specialist dealer.</li> </ol>
The charger is hot.	If the charger is used continuously to charge batteries, it may become hot.	► Wait a moment before using the charger again.
The LED on the charger does not light up.	Is the charger plug firmly connected to battery?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Check the charging port for any contaminants.</li> <li>2 Insert charger plug.</li> <li>3 Contact your specialist dealer if the LEDs on the charger still don't light up.</li> </ol>
	Is the battery fully charged?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 The LED on the battery charger will go out when the battery is fully charged. This is not a malfunction.</li> <li>2 Disconnect charger mains plug.</li> <li>3 Insert mains plug into the charger again.</li> <li>4 Wait a moment.</li> <li>5 Start charging.</li> <li>6 Contact your specialist dealer if the LEDs on the charger still don't light up.</li> </ol>
The battery cannot be removed.		► Contact your specialist dealer.

Table 57:Error solution for battery

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The battery cannot be inserted.		► Contact your specialist dealer.
Fluid is leaking from the battery.		► Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.
There is an unusual smell.		1 Remove the battery from the pedelec immediately. 2 Contact the fire service. 3 Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.
Fumes are emitted from the battery.		1 Remove the battery from the pedelec immediately. 2 Contact the fire service. 3 Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.

Table 57:Error solution for battery

## 9.4 Lighting

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The front light or rear light does not go on, even when the switch is pressed.	The basic settings in the electric drive system have probably been configured incorrectly. The light is defective.	► Remove pedelec from service immediately. ► Contact your specialist dealer.

Table 58:Error solution for battery

### 9.4.1 On-board computer error

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
No data is shown on the monitor when the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b> is pressed.	The battery charge level may be insufficient.	► Charge the battery.
	Is the power switched on?	► Press the <b>On-Off button (battery)</b> to switch the power on.
	Is the battery charged?	► If the battery is fitted to the pedelec and is being charged, it cannot be switched on. Interrupt charging process.
	Is the connector fitted to the power cable correctly?	1 Check that the power cable connector has not been disconnected. 2 Contact your specialist dealer if this is not the case.
	A component may be connected which the system is unable to recognise.	► Contact your specialist dealer.
The gear level is not shown on the display screen.	The gear level is only shown if the electronic gear shift is used.	1 Check that the power cable connector has not been disconnected. 2 Contact your specialist dealer if this is not the case.
The settings menu cannot be opened while you are riding.	The product is designed in such a way that the settings menu cannot be opened if the system detects that someone is riding the pedelec. This is not a malfunction.	1 Stop the pedelec. 2 Change settings when stationary only.

Table 59:Display error solution

## 9.5 Miscellaneous

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Two beeps will sound if a switch is pressed but the switch cannot be operated.	Pressed switch mode has been deactivated.	This is not a malfunction.
Three beeps are sounded.	A fault or warning has occurred.	▶ This occurs when a warning or an error is shown on the display screen. Follow the instructions for the code in Section 6.2 System Messages.
In the case of an electronic gear shift, pedal assistance becomes weaker when the gear is changed.	This is because the computer sets the pedal assistance to the optimum level.	This is not a malfunction.
A noise can be heard after switching.		▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
It is normal to hear a noise coming from the rear wheel when cycling as normal.	The gear shift setting may not have been made properly.	▶ Contact your specialist dealer.
When the bicycle stops, gear transmission will not switch to the position pre-configured in the functional feature.	You may have applied too much pressure on the pedals.	▶ It is easier to change gears if you press onto the pedals gently.

Table 60:Error solution for battery

## 9.5.1 RockShox suspension fork

### 9.5.1.1 Rebound too fast

The suspension fork rebounds too quickly, producing a "pogo stick" effect, where the wheel lifts from the ground in an uncontrolled way. This impairs traction and control (blue line).

Fork head and handlebars are deflected upwards if the wheel bounces back from the ground. Body weight may be thrown up and backwards in an uncontrolled way (green line).



Figure 228: Suspension fork rebounding too quickly

### Solution

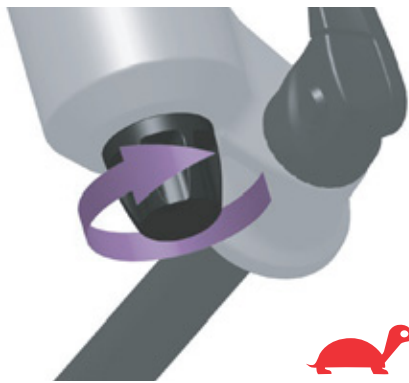


Figure 229: Turning the rebound screw damper towards tortoise symbol

- ▶ Turn the **rebound screw** clockwise damper towards the tortoise symbol.
- ⇒ The rebound speed is decreased (slower return).

### 9.5.1.2 Rebounding too slowly

The fork does not rebound quickly enough after absorbing a bump. The fork also remains deflected over subsequent bumps, which reduces deflection and increases the hardness of impacts. Available deflection, traction and control decrease (blue line).

The fork remains in a deflected state, causing the headset and handlebars to move to a lower position. Body weight is shifted forward after impact (green line).



Figure 230: Suspension fork rebounding too slowly

#### Solution



Figure 231: Turning the rebound screw damper towards hare symbol

- ▶ Turn the **rebound screw** anti-clockwise towards the hare symbol.
- ⇒ The rebound speed is increased (faster return).

### 9.5.1.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The fork deflects at a low point in the terrain. The deflection is quickly used up, the rider's weight

shifts forward and the pedelec loses some momentum.

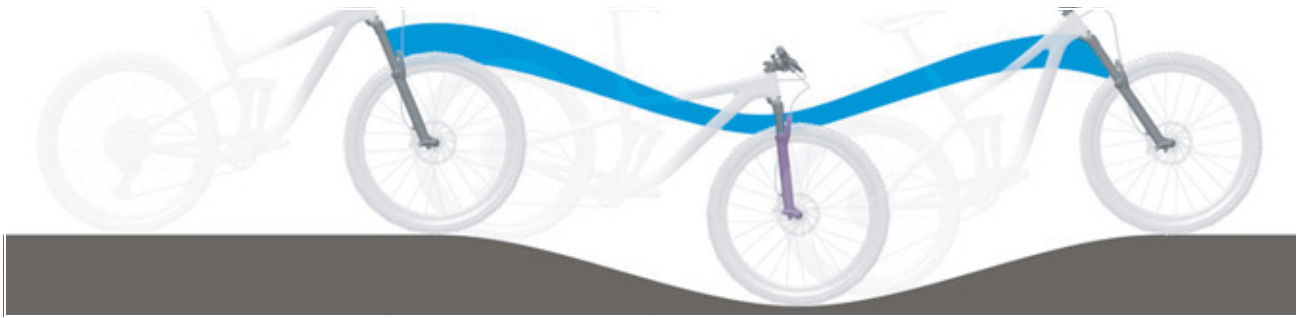


Figure 232: Excessively soft suspension in the suspension fork on hilly terrain

#### Solution



Figure 233: Changing compression adjuster to a harder setting

- ▶ Turn compression adjuster clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is increased and the deflection stroke speed is reduced. Efficiency on hilly and flat terrain is improved.

#### 9.5.1.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the fork deflects too slowly and the wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction decreases when the wheel no longer touches the ground.

The headset and handlebars are deflected upwards significantly, which can impair control.

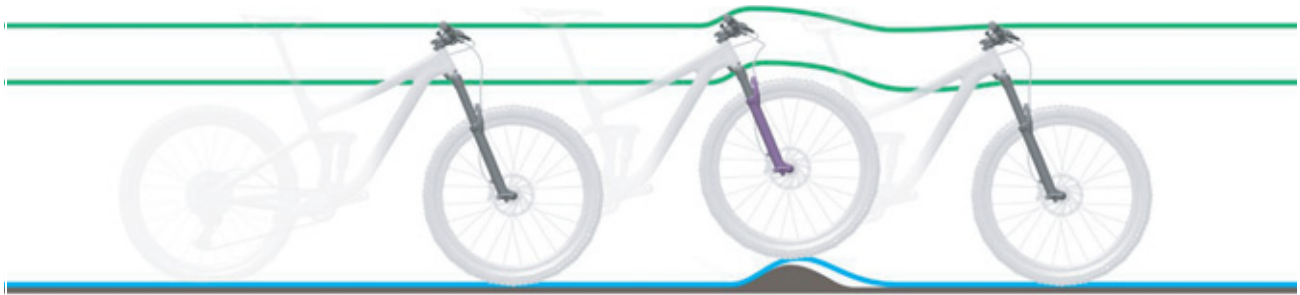


Figure 234: Excessively hard damping in the suspension fork on bumps

#### Solution



Figure 235: Changing compression adjuster to a softer setting

- ▶ Turn **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

## 9.5.2 RockShox rear frame damper

### 9.5.2.1 Rebound too fast

The rear frame damper rebounds too quickly, producing a “pogo stick” effect or causing the bike to bounce after the wheel hits a bump and lands on the ground again. This impairs traction and control due to the uncontrolled speed at which the damper rebounds after deflecting (blue line).

Saddle and handlebars are deflected upwards when the wheel bounces back from the ground. The rider's body weight may be shifted upwards and forwards if the damper fully rebounds too quickly (green line).



Figure 236: Rear frame damper rebounding too quickly

### Solution

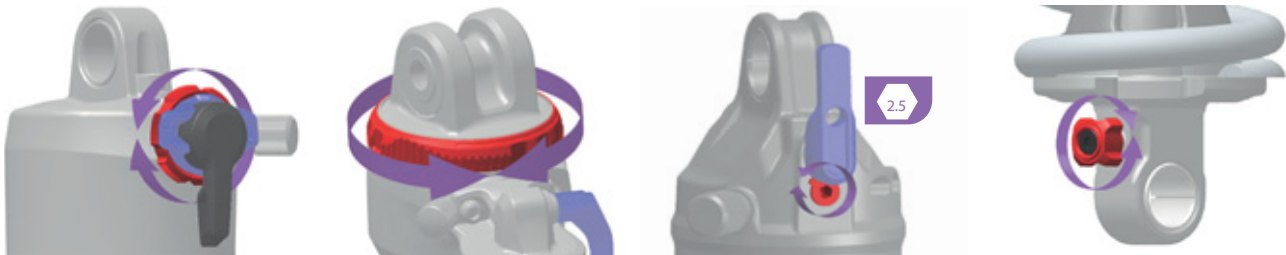


Figure 237: Position and shape of the rebound adjuster (red) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster** clockwise.
- ⇒ The rebound damping is increased. The rebound speed is reduced and traction and control is increased.



### 9.5.2.2 Rebounding too slowly

The rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough after a bump has been compensated and is not in the required initial position when the wheel hits the next bump. The rear frame damper remains compressed during successive bumps, thus reducing deflection and ground contact and increasing hardness on the next impact. The rear wheel bounces off the second bump since the rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough to make contact with the ground and return to the initial position again. The available deflection and traction are reduced (blue line).

The rear frame damper remains in a deflected state after contact with the first bump. When the rear wheel hits the second bump, the saddle follows the path of the rear wheel instead of remaining in a horizontal position. The available deflection and potential absorption of bumps are reduced, which causes instability and loss of control during successive bumps (green line).

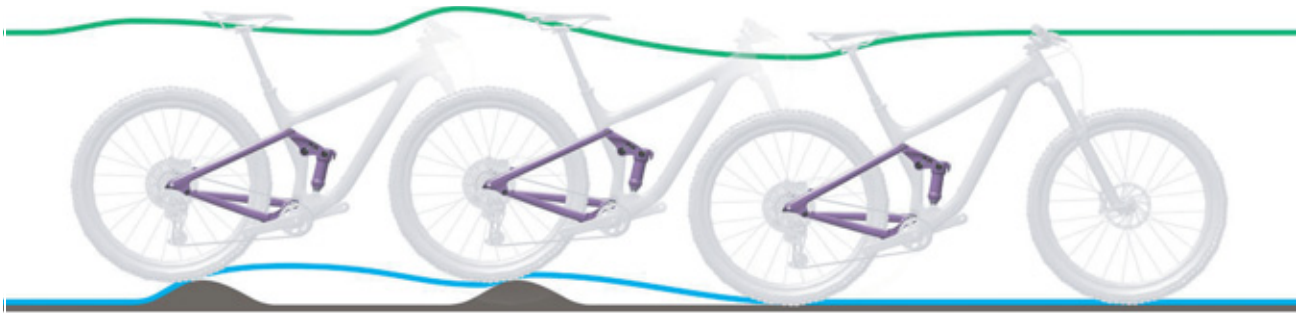


Figure 238: Rear frame damper rebounding too slowly

#### Solution

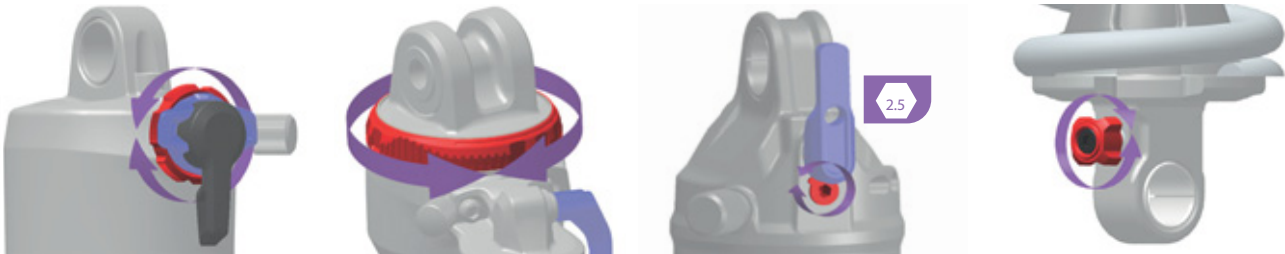


Figure 239: Position and shape of the rebound adjuster (red) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The rebound damping is reduced. The rebound speed is increased. Performance while riding over bumps is improved.

### 9.5.2.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The rear frame damper deflects deeply through the deflection range. Deflection is quickly used up,

the rider's weight shifts forward and the pedelec loses some momentum.



Figure 240: Excessively soft suspension in the rear frame damper on hilly terrain

### Solution

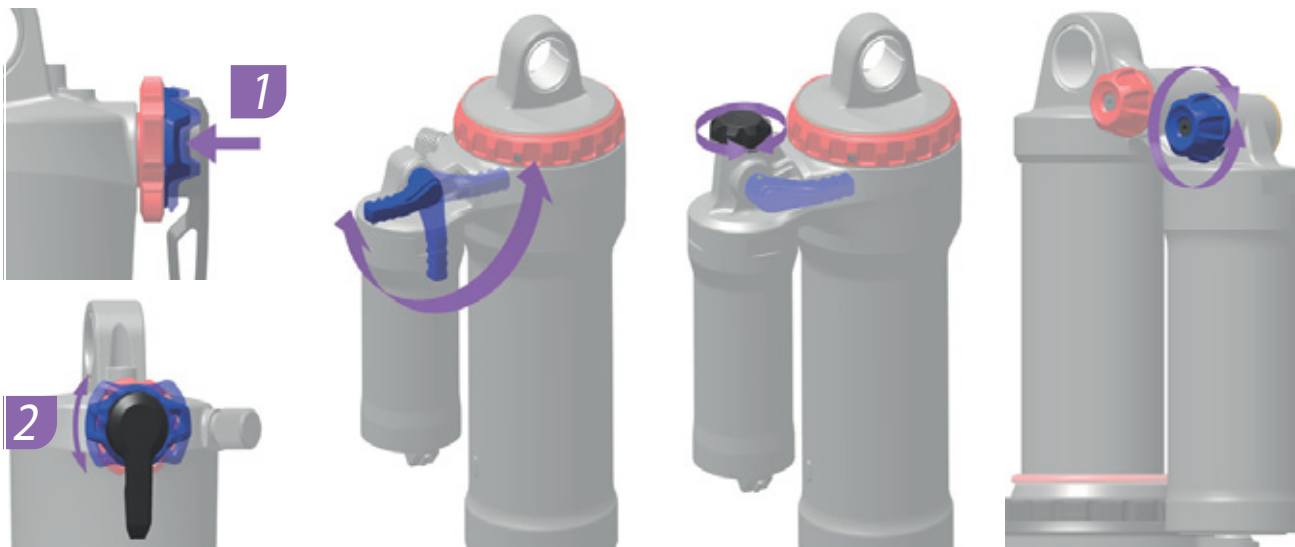


Figure 241: Position and shape of the compression adjuster (blue) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **compression adjuster** clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is increased and the deflection stroke speed is reduced.

### 9.5.2.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the damper deflects too slowly and the rear wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction is reduced (blue line).

Saddle and rider are deflected upwards and forwards, the rear wheel loses contact with the ground and control is reduced (green line).



Figure 242: Excessively hard damping in the rear frame damper on bumps

### Solution

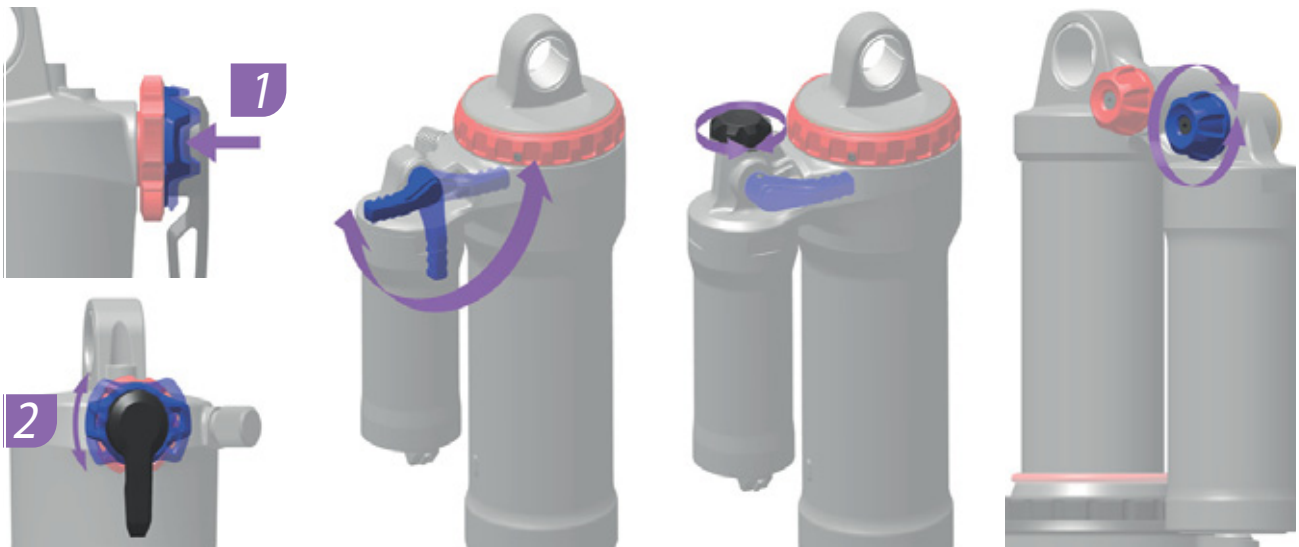


Figure 243: Position and shape of the compression adjuster (blue) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

## 9.6 Repair

Special expertise and tools are required for many repairs. For this reason, repairs may only be carried out at a specialist dealer. These include:

- Replacing tyres and rims
- Replacing rims, brake linings and brake discs
- Replacing and tensioning the chain.

### 9.6.1 Original parts and lubricants

The individual pedelec parts have been carefully selected and matched to one other.

Only original parts and lubricants must be used for maintenance and repair.

The constantly updated accessory approval and parts lists are in Section 11, Documents and Drawings.

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions for the new components.

### 9.6.2 Replacing the lighting

- ▶ Only use components of the respective power class for replacement.

### 9.6.3 Setting the front light

- ▶ The *front light* must be set so that its light beam shines on the road 10 m in front of the pedelec.

### 9.6.4 Checking tyre clearance

The tyre needs to be checked each time a suspension fork tyre is changed to another size.

- 1 Release pressure from the fork.
- 2 Press fork together fully.
- 3 Measure the gap between the top of the tyre and the crown's lower surface. The gap must not be less than 10 mm. If the tyre is too large, the tyre will touch the crown's lower surface if the fork is fully pressed together.
- 4 Release pressure on fork and pump it up again if it is an air suspension fork.
- 5 Take into account the fact that the gap will be smaller if there is a guard. Check again to ensure that there is sufficient clearance for the tyre.

## 10 Recycling and disposal



This device is marked according to the European Directive 2012/19/EU on waste electrical and electronic equipment – WEEE and the European



Directive 2006/66/EC on accumulators. The directive provides the framework for the return and recycling of used devices

across the EU. Consumers are legally required to return all used batteries of any type. It is forbidden to dispose of batteries in domestic waste.

The battery manufacturer is legally obliged to take back used and old batteries free of charge according to Section 9 German Batteries Act. The pedelec frame, battery, motor, on-board computer and charger are recyclable materials. You must dispose of and recycle them separately from the domestic waste in compliance with applicable statutory regulations. Separate collection and

recycling saves reserves of raw materials and ensures that all the regulations for protection of health and the environment are adhered to when recycling the product and/or the battery.

- ▶ Never dismantle the pedelec, battery or charger for disposal.

The pedelec, on-board computer, the unopened and undamaged battery and the charger can be returned to any specialist dealer free of charge. Further disposal options may be available, depending on the region.

- ▶ Store the individual parts of the decommissioned pedelec in a dry place, free from frost, where they are protected from direct sunlight.

### 10.1 Removal of waste guidelines

Waste type	Disposal
Non-hazardous waste	
Recycling	
Waste paper, cardboard	Return paper collection bin, paper container, undamaged transport packaging to suppliers
Scrap metal and aluminium	Take to municipal collection points or have collected by waste disposal companies
Tyres, tubes	Tyre manufacturers' collection points, collection forms and fax templates available from tyre manufacturers Otherwise, residual waste bin (grey bin)
Fibre composite components (e.g. carbon, GRP)	Large carbon components such as defective frames and carbon rims can be sent to special collection points for recycling; see <a href="http://www.cfk-recycling.de/index.php?id=57">www.cfk-recycling.de/index.php?id=57</a>
Dual system sales packaging made of plastic, metal and composite material, lightweight packaging	Collection by waste disposal firm where applicable; return transport packaging to suppliers Plastic waste bin (yellow bin)
CDs, DVDs	Take to municipal collection points since they are made of high-grade plastic and are easy to recycle Otherwise, residual waste bin (grey bin)

Table 61: Removal of waste guidelines


Waste type	Disposal
<b>Dispose of</b>	
Residual waste	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
Biodegradable lubricants Biodegradable oils Biodegradable cleaning cloths daubed in oil	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
Filament lamps, halogen lamps	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
<b>Hazardous waste</b>	
 <b>Recycling</b>	
Batteries, rechargeable batteries	Return to the battery manufacturer
Electric devices: Motor Display Control panel Wiring	Take to a municipal collection point for electronic waste
<b>Dispose of</b>	
Waste oil Cleaning cloths daubed in oil Lubrication oil Gear oil Lubricating grease Cleaning fluids Kerosene White spirit Hydraulic fluid Brake fluid	<p>Never mix different oil fluids. Store in original container</p> <p>Small quantities (usually &lt;30 kg) Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)</p> <p>Larger quantities (&gt;30 kg) Collection by waste disposal companies</p>
Paints Varnishes Thinners	Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)
Neon lights, energy-saving lamps	Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)

Table 61: Removal of waste guidelines



# 11 Documents

## 11.1 Assembly report

Date:

Frame number:

Components	Description	Tests	Criteria		Measures if rejected
			Acceptance	Rejection	
Front wheel	Assembly		O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Kickstand	Check mount fastening	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Tyres		Tyre pressure check	O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/ too high	Adjust tyre pressure
Frame	Check for damage – fracture, scratches		O.K.	Damage detected	<i>Take out of operation</i> , new frame
Handles, coverings	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Not provided	Retighten screws, new handles and coverings as specified in parts list
Handlebars, stem	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if necessary
Steering headset	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Saddle	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Seat post	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pannier rack	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Attachments	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Bell		Functional check	O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
<b>Suspension elements</b>					
Fork, suspension fork	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Rear frame damper	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Suspension seat post	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
<b>Brake system</b>					
Brake lever	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake fluid	Check fluid level		O.K.	Too little	Refill with brake fluid; new brake hoses if damaged
Brake linings	Check brake linings, brake discs and rims for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims
Back-pedal brake braking armature	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Lighting system</b>					
Rechargeable battery	First examination		O.K.	Error message	<i>Take out of service</i> ; contact battery manufacturer, new battery
Light cabling	Connections, correct wiring		O.K.	Cable defective, no light	New cabling
Rear light	Side light	Functional check	O.K.	No constant light	<i>Take out of service</i> ; new rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Front light	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check	O.K.	No constant light	<i>Take out of service</i> ; new front light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Reflectors	All complete, state, fastening		O.K.	Damaged or not all complete	New reflectors



Drive/gear shift					
<b>Chain/cassette/pinion/chainring</b>	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as specified in parts list
<b>Chain guard/spoke guard</b>	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
<b>Bottom bracket axle/crank</b>	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Pedals</b>	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Shifter</b>	Check mount fastening	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Shift cables</b>	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
<b>Front derailleur</b>	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
<b>Rear derailleur</b>	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
Electric drive					
<b>On-board computer</b>	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart, test battery, new software or new on-board computer, <i>take out of service</i>
<b>Electric drive control panel</b>	Drive Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	No response	Restart; contact control panel manufacturer, new control panel
<b>Tachometer</b>		Speed measurement	O.K.	Pedelec travelling 10 % too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
<b>Cabling</b>	Visual inspection		O.K.	Failure in system, damage, kinked cables	New cabling
<b>Battery mount</b>	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Functional check	O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
<b>Motor</b>	Visual inspection and mount		O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor, contact motor manufacturer, new motor
<b>Software</b>	Check version		In latest version	Not latest version	Import update

### Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly/inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
<b>Brake system</b>		Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
<b>Gear shift under operating load</b>		Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
<b>Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)</b>		Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
<b>Electric drive</b>		Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate defective part in electric drive and correct
<b>Lighting system</b>		Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
<b>Test ride</b>			No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct

<b>Date:</b>	
<b>Fitter's name:</b>	
<b>Final inspection by workshop manager</b>	





## 11.2 Maintenance log

### Diagnosis and documentation of current status

Date:

Frame number:

Components	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Acceptance	Rejection	
Front wheel	6 months	Assembly			O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Kickstand	6 months	Check mount fastening	Functional check		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Tyres	6 months		Tyre pressure check		O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/ too high	Adjust tyre pressure
Frame	6 months	Check for damage – fracture, scratches			O.K.	Damage detected	Take pedelec out of service, new frame
Handles, coverings	6 months	Wear; check if fastened securely			O.K.	Not provided	Retighten screws, new handles and coverings as specified in parts list
Handlebars, stem	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if necessary
Steering headset	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check	Lubricating and adjustment	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Saddle	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Seat post	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pannier rack	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Attachments	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Bell	6 months		Functional check		O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
<b>Suspension elements</b>							
Fork, suspension fork	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Rear frame damper	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Suspension seat post	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list



Components	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Acceptance	Rejection	
<b>Brake system</b>							
<b>Brake lever</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Brake fluid</b>	6 months	Check fluid level		Depending on time of year	O.K.	Too little	Top up brake fluid; <i>take Pedelec out of service</i> if damaged; new brake hoses
<b>Brake linings</b>	6 months	Check brake linings, brake discs and rims for damage			O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims
<b>Back-pedal brake braking armature</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Brake system</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening		Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Lighting system</b>							
<b>Rechargeable battery</b>	6 months	First examination			O.K.	Error message	Contact battery manufacturer; <i>take out of service</i> , new battery
<b>Light cabling</b>	6 months	Connections, correct wiring			O.K.	Cable defective, no light	New cabling
<b>Rear light</b>	6 months	Side light	Functional check		O.K.	No constant light	New rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
<b>Front lamp</b>	6 months	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check		O.K.	No constant light	New front light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
<b>Reflectors</b>	6 months	All complete, state, fastening			O.K.	Damaged or not all complete	New reflectors
<b>Drive/gear shift</b>							
<b>Chain/cassette/pinion/chainring</b>	6 months	Check for damage			O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as specified in parts list
<b>Chain guard/spoke guard</b>	6 months	Check for damage			O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
<b>Bottom bracket axle/crank</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Pedals</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Shifter</b>	6 months	Check mount fastening	Functional check		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
<b>Shift cables</b>	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
<b>Front derailleur</b>	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
<b>Rear derailleur</b>	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust



Components	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Acceptance	Rejection	
<b>Electric drive</b>							
<b>On-board computer</b>	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart, test battery, new software or new on-board computer; <i>take out of service</i>
<b>Electric drive control panel</b>	6 months	Drive Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	No response	Restart; contact control panel manufacturer, new control panel
<b>Tachometer</b>	6 months		Speed measurement		O.K.	Pedelec travelling 10 % too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
<b>Cabling</b>	6 months	Visual inspection			O.K.	Failure in system, damage, kinked cables	New cabling
<b>Battery mount</b>	6 months	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Functional check		O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
<b>Motor</b>	6 months	Visual inspection and mount			O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor; contact motor manufacturer, new motor; <i>take out of service</i>
<b>Software</b>	6 months	Check version			In latest version	Not latest version	Import update

### Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly/inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
<b>Brake system</b>	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
<b>Gear shift under operating load</b>	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
<b>Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)</b>	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
<b>Electric drive</b>	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate defective part in electric drive and correct
<b>Lighting system</b>	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
<b>Test ride</b>	6 months	Functional check	No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct

Date:	
Fitter's name:	
Final inspection by workshop manager	



**Notes**

## 11.2.1 Nos FS 2.1

22-R-0001

Frame	...	Aluminium
Fork	ROCKSHOX, Lyrik Select	Deflection: 150 mm; DebonAir + RC charger, lockout
Damper	ROCKSHOX, Deluxe Select+ RL	
Steering headset	...	Aheadset, integrated
Handlebars	MTB	Aluminium, 31.8 mm
Handles	MTB 1670D3	with clamping ring
Stem	...	Ahead stem, aluminium; MonkeyLink interface available
Saddle	SELLE ROYAL, Aidon	...
Seat post	Limotec, DP01-Z	...
Saddle clamp	#	...
Crank set	SAMOX ET40-F17	Crank length: 170 mm
Pedals	VP 469 MTB	...
Rear derailleur	SHIMANO, Deore XT RD-M8100	12-speed
Shifter	SHIMANO, Deore XT SL-M8100	Shifter
Front derailleur	...	...
Cassette/cassette sprocket	SHIMANO, Deore CS-M6100	10-51T
Chain	SHIMANO, CN-M6100	...
Belt	...	...
Front brake	SHIMANO XT BR-M8100	Hydraulic disc brake
Rear brake	SHIMANO XT BR-M8100	Hydraulic disc brake
Brake lever, front/rear	SHIMANO BL-M8100	...
Disc, front	SHIMANO SM-RT64	203 mm
Disc, rear	SHIMANO RT-EM600	203 mm, lock ring
Wheel set, front/rear	CRANKBROTHERS, Crankbrothers Synthesis	15 × 110 mm/12 × 148 mm
Rim, front/rear	...	From wheel set
Hub, front	...	From wheel set
Hub, rear	...	From wheel set
Spokes	...	From wheel set
Spoke nipples	...	From wheel set
Tyres, front/rear	SCHWALBE, Magic Mary Evolution / Hans Dampf Evolution Line	62-622 / 65-584
Tube	SCHWALBE SV 21	...
Front lamp	MONKEYLINK reflector	...
Rear lamp	MONKEYLINK reflector	...
Dynamo	...	...
Pannier rack	...	...
Guards	...	...
Chain guard	...	...

<b>Lock</b>	ABUS, ABUS IT1 Plus	Battery lock
<b>Stand/stand mount</b>	...	...
<b>Motor</b>	SHIMANO EP8 DU-EP800	250 Watt, 85 Nm
<b>Rechargeable battery</b>	SIMPLO	630
<b>On-board computer</b>	SHIMANO EP8	with EP8 switch
<b>Charger</b>	SIMPLO	2 A

...not available

# Not yet available when the instructions were produced

## 12 Glossary

### Bicycle for young adults

*Source: ISO 4210-2:* pedelec designed for use on public roads by a young adult whose weight is less than 40 kg, with maximum saddle height of 635 mm or more and less than 750 mm (see ISO 4210).

### Brake lever

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* lever used to apply the brake.

### Braking distance

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* distance travelled by a pedelec between the commencement of braking and the point at which the pedelec comes to rest.

### Cargo bike

*Source: DIN 79010:* pedelec mainly designed to carry goods.

### CE marking

*Source: Directive on Machinery:* the manufacturer uses the CE marking to declare that the pedelec complies with the applicable requirements.

### City and trekking bicycles

*Source: EN-ISO 4210 - 2:* pedelec designed for use on public roads primarily for means of transportation or leisure.

### Consumables

*Source: EN 82079-1:* any part or material that is needed to continue using or maintain the product.

### Continuous power rating

*Source: ISO 15194:2017,* output power specified by the manufacturer at which the motor reaches its thermal equilibrium under the specified ambient conditions.

### Decommissioning

*Source: DIN 31051:* intentional, unlimited interruption in an object's functional capability.

### Disc brake

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* brake in which brake pads are used to grip the lateral faces of a thin disc attached to or incorporated into the wheel hub.

### Drive belt

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* seamless ring belt which is used as a means of transmitting drive force.

### Electrical control system

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* electronic and/or electrical component or an assembly of components provided for installation into a vehicle, together with all electrical connections and associated wiring for the motor electrical power assistance.

### Electrically power assisted pedelec, pedelec

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* electrically power assisted cycle pedelec EPAC bicycles, equipped with pedals and an auxiliary electric motor, which cannot be propelled exclusively by means of the auxiliary electric motor, except in start-up assistance mode.

### Emergency stop

*Source: ISO 13850:2015,* function or signal, designed: — to avert arising or reduce existing hazards to persons, damage to machinery or to work in progress; – to be initiated by a single human action.

### Fault

*Source: EN 13306:2018-02, 6.1:* state of an item (4.2.1) characterized by inability to perform a required function (4.5.1), excluding the inability during preventive maintenance or other planned actions, or due to lack of external resources.

### Folding bicycle

*Source: ISO 4210-2:* pedelec designed to fold into a compact form, making it easy to transport and store.

**Fork steerer**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* part of a fork that rotates around the steering axis of a pedelec frame head tube. It is normally connected to the fork crown or directly to the fork legs, and is normally the point of connection between the fork and the handlebar stem.

**Fracture**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* unintentional separation into two or more parts.

**Maintenance**

*Source: DIN 31051:* maintenance is generally performed at regular intervals and often carried out by trained technical staff. This ensures a maximum service life and low wear and tear for the maintained items. Proper maintenance is often also a pre-requisite for providing a warranty.

**Manufacturer**

*Source: Directive 2006/42/EC on Machinery, 17.05.2006* Any natural or legal person who designs and/or manufactures machinery or partly completed machinery covered by this Directive and is responsible for the conformity of the machinery or the partly completed machinery with this Directive with a view to its being placed on the market, under his own name or trademark or for his own use.

**Maximum continuous power rating**

*Source: ZEG:* the maximum continuous power rating is the maximum power for the electric motor output shaft during 30 minutes.

**Maximum permitted total weight**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* weight of the fully assembled pedelec plus the rider and baggage, as specified by the manufacturer.

**Maximum saddle height**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* vertical distance from the ground to the point where the top of the seat surface is intersected by the seat-post axis, measured with the saddle in a horizontal position and with the seat-post set to the minimum insertion-depth mark.

**Maximum tyre pressure**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* maximum tyre pressure recommended by the tyre or rim manufacturer for a safe and efficient performance. If the rim and tyre both indicate a maximum tyre pressure, the maximum inflation pressure is the lower of the two pressures indicated.

**Minimum insertion depth**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* mark indicating the minimum insertion depth of handlebar stem into fork steerer (fork stem) or seat post into frame.

**Model year**

*Source: ZEG:* the model year refers to the first production year that the series-manufactured pedelec was manufactured in the version in question and is not always identical with the year of manufacture. The year of manufacture may be before the model year in some cases. If no technical modifications are introduced to the series, production may continue of pedelecs from a previous model year.

**Mountain bike**

*Source: ISO 4210 - 2:* pedelec designed for use off-road on rough terrain, on public roads, and on public pathways, equipped with a suitably strengthened frame and other components, and, typically, with wide-section tyres with coarse tread patterns and a wide range of transmission gears.

**Negative deflection**

*Negative deflection or sag* is fork compression caused by body weight and gear (e.g. a backpack), their sitting position and the frame geometry.

**Off-road rough terrain**

*Source: EN 15194:2017:* rough gravel tracks, forest trails and other generally off-road tracks where tree roots and rocks are likely to be encountered.

**Operating instructions**

*Source: ISO/DIS 20607:2018:* part of the user information that machine manufacturers provide to machine operators; it contains guidance, instructions and tips related to the use of the machine in all its life cycle phases.



**Placing on the market**

*Source: Directive 2006/42/EC on Machinery, 17.05.2006*, Making available for the first time in the Community machinery or partly completed machinery with a view to distribution or use, whether for reward or free of charge.

**Pressure point**

*Source: ZEG*: the pressure point on a brake is the point on the brake lever where the brake disc and brake pads respond and the braking process is initiated.

**Quick-release device, quick release**

*Source: EN 15194:2017*: lever actuated mechanism that connects, retains or secures a wheel or any other component.

**Racing bicycle**

*Source: ISO 4210-2*: pedelec designed for amateur rides at high speed and for use on public roads having a control and steering assembly with multiple grip positions to provide an aerodynamic posture Bicycle multi-speed transmission system and a tyre width not greater than 28 mm with the fully assembled bicycle having a maximum mass of 12 kg.

**Rebound**

The rebound defines the speed at which the fork rebounds after being loaded.

**Rechargeable battery, battery**

*Source: DIN 40729:1985-05*: a rechargeable battery is an energy storage device that can store supplied electrical energy as chemical energy (charging) and release it as electrical energy when required (discharging).

**Seat post**

*Source: EN 15194:2017*: component that clamps the saddle (with a bolt or assembly) and connects it to the frame.

**Serial number**

*Source – ZEG*: each pedelec has an eight-digit type number which is used to specify the design model year, the type and the version.

**Shut-off speed**

*Source: EN 15194:2017*: speed reached, by the pedelec, at the moment the current has dropped to zero or to the no load current value.

**Slippage**

*Source: DIN 75204-1:1992-05*: the difference in relation to vehicle speed between the vehicle speed and the speed of its wheels at their circumference.

**Spare part**

*Source: EN 13306:2018-02, 3.5*: item intended to replace a corresponding item in order to retain or maintain the original required function of the item.

**Suspension fork**

*Source: EN 15194:2017*: front wheel fork incorporating controlled, axial flexibility to reduce the transmission of road-shocks to the rider.

**Suspension frame**

*Source: EN 15194:2017*: frame incorporating controlled, vertical flexibility to reduce the transmission of road-shocks to the rider.

**Total deflection**

*Source: Benny Wilbers, Werner Koch: Neue Fahrwerkstechnik im Detail (New chassis technology in detail)*: The distance that the wheel travels between an unloaded and a loaded position is called total deflection. When at rest, the vehicle's mass is applied to the springs and reduces the total deflection by the *negative deflection* to the positive deflection.

**Wear**

*Source: DIN 31051*: reduction in useful life (4.3.4), caused by chemical and/or physical processes.

**Weight of ready-to-ride pedelec**

*Source: ZEG*: the indicated weight for a ready-to-ride pedelec refers to the weight of a pedelec at the time of sale. The weight of each additional accessory must be added to this weight

**Wheel**

*Source: ISO 4210 - 2:* unit or combination of hub, rim and spokes or disc, but excluding tyre assembly.

**Work environment**

*Source: ISO 9000:2015:* set of conditions under which work is performed.

**Year of manufacture**

*Source: ZEG:* the year of manufacture is the year in which the pedelec was manufactured. The production period is always from May to July the following year.

**12.1 Abbreviations**

ABS = anti-blocking system

ECP = electronic cell protection

**12.2 Simplified terms**

The following terms are used for better legibility:

Term	Meaning
Operating instructions	Original operating instructions
Damper	Rear frame damper
Specialist dealer	Bicycle specialist dealer
Motor	Drive motor, sub-system
Belt drive	Toothed belt drive

**Table 62: Simplified terms**

## 13 Appendix

### I. Translation of the original EC/EU Declaration of Conformity

#### Manufacturer

HERCULES GMBH  
Longericher Strasse 2  
50739 Köln, Germany

#### Authorised representative for documentation\*

Janine Otto  
c/o ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG  
Longericher Strasse 2  
50739 Köln, Germany

The machine, pedelec types:

22-R-0001      NOS FS 2.1      Mountain bike

Year of manufacture 2021 and year of manufacture 2022, complies with the following applicable EU provisions:

- Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC
- RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU
- Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU.

The safety objectives in the Low Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU have been met in compliance with Appendix I, No. 1.5.1 of the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

The following harmonised standards have been applied:

- ISO 20607:2018 Safety machinery – Instruction handbook – General drafting principles
- EN 15194:2017, Cycles – Electrically power assisted cycles – EPAC Bicycles

The following other technical standards have been applied:

- EN 11243:2016: Cycles – Pannier racks for bicycles – Requirements and test methods



Cologne, 19/04/2021

.....  
Georg Honkomp, Managing Director, HERCULES GmbH

\* Community member who is authorised to compile the technical documentation

## II. Declaration of Conformity for incomplete machine

### 2006/42/EC DECLARATION OF INCORPORATION OF PARTLY COMPLETED MACHINERY

(Original)  
SHIMANO INC.

1. Business name and full address of the manufacturer and, where appropriate, his authorized representative;

SHIMANO INC.

3-77 Oimatsu-cho, Sakai-ku, Sakai City, Osaka, Japan

2. Name and address of the person authorized to compile the technical file, who must be established in the Community;

Shimano Europe BV

High Tech Campus 92, 5656 AG Eindhoven, the Netherlands

Senior Manager, Mr. Frank Peiffer

3. Description and identification of the partly completed machinery, including generic denomination, function, model, type, serial number and commercial name;

Electric Power Assisted Cycle components "SHIMANO STEPS EP800 series"

SC-E5003, SC-E7000, SC-EM800, SW-E6010-L, SW-E7000-L, SW-EM800-L, SW-E7000-R, SW-E6010-R  
SW-M8050-R, RD-M8050-GS, RD-M8100-SGS, RD-M9100-SGS, RD-M8120-SGS, RD-M9100-GS  
DU-EP800, DC-EP800-A, DC-EP800-B, DC-EP800-G, RT-EM810, RT-EM910, RT-EM300, RT-EM600  
SM-CN910-12, FC-EM600, FC-M8150, FC-EM900, SM-CRE80-B, SM-CRE80, SM-CRE70, SM-CRE70-B  
SM-CRE70-12, SM-CRE80-12-B, SM-CRE80-12-SB, SM-CRE61, SM-CDE80, CD-EM800, MU-UR500  
BM-E8016, BM-E8020, BM-E8030-A, BM-E8030-B, BM-E8031-A, BM-E8031-B, BT-E8016, BT-E8010  
BT-E8014, BT-E8020, BT-E8036, BT-E8035, BT-E8035-L, EW-SW300, EW-SW100, EW-CP100  
EC-E6000, EC-E6002, EC-E8004, SM-BCC1, EW-SD300, EW-SD50, EW-AD305, EW-JC302, EW-JC304

4. We, Shimano Inc. hereby declare that the following partly completed machinery "SHIMANO STEPS EP800 series" fulfills all of the relevant requirements of EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

List of the applied and observed requirements of the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC, Appendix I, that the partly completed machinery fulfills:

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 1.2.3, 1.2.4, 1.2.4.1, 1.2.4.2, 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4, 1.3.5, 1.3.6, 1.3.7, 1.4.1, 1.4.2, 1.4.2.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.2, 1.5.3, 1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.5.6, 1.5.7, 1.5.8, 1.5.9, 1.5.10, 1.5.11, 1.5.13, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.6.3, 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.4, 1.7.4.1, 1.7.4.2, 1.7.4.3

Applicable harmonized standards:

EN 15194:2017 Cycles - Electrically power assisted cycles - EPAC Bicycles

EN 62133:2017 (for battery required by EN 15194:2017)

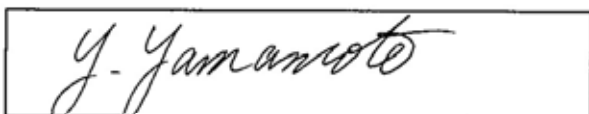
EN 60335-2-29:2004+A2:2010 (for battery charger required by EN 15194:2017)

5. We, Shimano Inc. have responsibility to supply related information of partially completed machinery depending on requirement with proper reason by Competent Authorities.  
We, Shimano Inc. will send related information by any method (E-Mail, Fax, letter and so on).

6. The machinery is incomplete and must not be put into service until the manufacture of the final machinery into which it is to be incorporated has declared the conformity of the final machinery with the provisions of the directive (2006/42/EC).

7. The place and date of the declaration;  
Sakai, Osaka, JAPAN, 22<sup>st</sup>h May 2020

8. The identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration on behalf of the Manufacturer or his authorized representative.

A rectangular box containing a handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Y. Yamamoto".

Mr. Yasushi Yamamoto (manager, Quality Engineering Section, Procurement Department, Bicycle Components Division)

## II. RED Declaration of Conformity

MODEL: SC-EM800

RI-7H90D-000

### Regional regulatory information

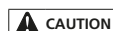
#### ■ Europe



Българин [Bulgarian]	С настоящото SHIMANO INC. декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение SC-EM800 е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕО. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Česky [Czech]	Tímto SHIMANO INC. prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení SC-EM800 je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Uplně znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Dansk [Danish]	Herved erklærer SHIMANO INC., at radioudstyretypen SC-EM800 er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt SHIMANO INC., dass der Funkanlagentyp SC-EM800 der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga deklareerib SHIMANO INC., et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp SC-EM800 vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EÜ nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
English	Hereby, SHIMANO INC. declares that the radio equipment type SC-EM800 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Español [Spanish]	Por la presente, SHIMANO INC. declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico SC-EM800 es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα ο/η SHIMANO INC., δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός SC-EM800 πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Français [French]	Le soussigné, SHIMANO INC., déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type SC-EM800 est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Hrvatski [Croatian]	SHIMANO INC. ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa SC-EM800 u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o skladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Italiano [Italian]	Il fabbricante, SHIMANO INC., dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio SC-EM800 è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo SHIMANO INC. deklarē, ka radioiekārta SC-EM800 atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Aš, SHIMANO INC., patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas SC-EM800 atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaar ik, SHIMANO INC., dat het type radioapparaat SC-EM800 conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Maltese [Maltese]	B'dan, SHIMANO INC., niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju SC-EM800 huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Magyar [Hungarian]	SHIMANO INC. igazolja, hogy a SC-EM800 típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Polski [Polish]	SHIMANO INC. niniejszym oświadczam, że typ urządzenia radiowego SC-EM800 jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Português [Portuguese]	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) SHIMANO INC. declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio SC-EM800 está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Român [Romanian]	Prin prezenta, SHIMANO INC. declară că tipul de echipamente radio SC-EM800 este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Slovensko [Slovenian]	SHIMANO INC. potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme SC-EM800 skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Slovensky [Slovak]	SHIMANO INC. týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu SC-EM800 je v súlade so smernico 2014/53/EÚ. Uplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Suomi [Finnish]	SHIMANO INC. vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyypin SC-EM800 on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed försäkras SHIMANO INC. att denna typ av radioutrustning SC-EM800 överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Türkçe [Turkish]	İbaramda, SHIMANO INC. SC-EM800 tipi telsiz ekipmanının 2014/53/EU sayılı direktif ile uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. AB uyumluluk beyanının tam metnini internet sitesinden bulabilirsiniz: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>
Norsk [Norwegian]	Herved erklærer SHIMANO INC. at radioutstyret av typen SC-EM800 er i samsvar med EU-direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullstendige teksten til EU-konformitetserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: <a href="http://si.shimano.com">http://si.shimano.com</a>

#### ■ USA

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- To maintain compliance with FCC's RF exposure guidelines, use only the supplied antenna. Unauthorized antenna, modification, or attachments could damage the transmitter and may violate FCC regulations. This equipment complies with FCC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

**NOTE:** This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/ TV technician for help.

### ■ Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. this device may not cause interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
2. l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

### ■ Japan



本製品には、電波法に基づく小電力データ通信システムの無線局として、工事設計認証を受けた無線設備を内蔵しています。  
SWAN-2 : 「001-A06159」

### ■ Singapore

Complies with  
IMDA Standards  
DA105949

### ■ Brazil



00243-16-04304

Fabricado no Japão  
Este produto contém a placa SWAN-2 código de homologação: 00243-16-04304.  
Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL:

<http://www.anatel.gov.br>

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

### ■ Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטני של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-71673  
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

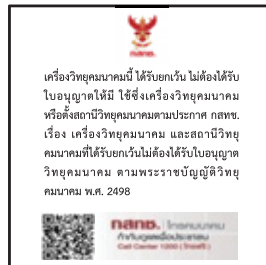
### ■ Korea



MSIP-CRM-WY7-SWAN-2  
R-R-WY7-3A

기기명칭: Cycle Computer  
제조연월일: 포장에 표시.  
제조국가: 중국  
인증 받은 자의 상호: SHIMANO INC.

### ■ Thailand



### ■ Taiwan

內容發射器模組:  
CCAHI6LPO550T3

商標: SHIMANO

警語

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## 14 Keyword index

### A

- Air valve, 31
- Articulated shaft,
  - caring for 148
- Axle, 31

### B

- Basic cleaning 141
- Battery level indicator, 52
- Battery, 43
  - checking, 61
  - cleaning, 141
  - disposing of, 204
  - shipping 58
  - transporting, 58
- Technical data 53

Belt guard 16

Belt pulley, 41

Belt tension,
 

- check 157

Belt, 41

- cleaning, 144

Bike headset, see steering headset

Bowden cable 38

Brake cable, 38

Brake calliper, 39

Brake disc, 39

- checking 155
- cleaning, 144

Brake lever

- cleaning, 144

Brake lever,

- servicing, 149

Brake lining, 39

Brake, 38

- checking brake cables 156
- checking the brake disc 155
- checking the pressure point 154
- cleaning, 140
- securing during transport 58

- Cable clip, 38

- Cover cap, 38

- hydraulic 38

- Insert pin, 38

- Knob, 38

- mechanical 38

- Union nut 38

Break in operation, 59

- carrying out, 59

- preparing, 59

### C

Carbon seat post
 

- servicing, 147

Cassette,
 

- cleaning, 143

Chain guard 16
 

- cleaning, 144

Chain tension,
 

- checking 157

Chain wheel, 41

Chain wheels,
 

- cleaning, 143

Chain, 25, 41
 

- cleaning, 144
- maintaining, 151, 158
- servicing, 148

Charger,
 

- disposing of, 204

Chassis, 26

Child seat, 116

Compression adjustment, 30

Compression damper, 31

Control panel,
 

- cleaning, 141

Crown, 31

### D

Dimensions, 57

Direction of travel, 41

Disc brake, 39

Display, 44

- charging the battery, 108, 115, 125

Drive system, 41

- switching off, 124

- switching on, 124
- mechanical 41

Dust seal, 31

### E

Electrical cable,
 

- checking 156

Emergency stop system 17

### F

Fork end, 27, 31

Fork leg 27

Fork steerer, 27, 31

Fork, 27

- cleaning, 142

- servicing, 140, 145

- SR Suntour structure, 31

Frame, 26

- cleaning, 142

- servicing, 140, 145

Front derailleur,

- cleaning, 143

Front wheel brake, 39

- braking, 128

Front wheel, see Wheel

### G

Gear recommendation, 46

Gear shift,

- switching, 131, 132

### H

Handle,

- servicing, 146

Handlebars, 25, 27

- cleaning, 142

- servicing, 146

Handles,

- cleaning, 142

Headset, see steering headset

Hub, 36

- cleaning, 143

- servicing, 147

### I

Initial commissioning, 61

### J

Jockey wheel,

- caring for 148

Journey information,

- switching, 47, 127

- Max. speed, 47, 110, 127

### K

Kickstand,

- cleaning, 142

- servicing, 146

### L

Leather handle,

- servicing, 146

Leather handles,

- cleaning, 142

Leather saddle,

- cleaning, 143

- servicing, 147

Level of assistance, 47, 126

- selecting, 126

- ECO, 47, 126

- SPORT, 47, 126

- TOUR, 47, 126

- TURBO, 47, 126



**M**

- Minimum insertion depth marking, 76
- Motor cover 16
- Motor,
  - cleaning, 141
- Mudguard 16
  - cleaning, 142
  - servicing, 146

**O**

- On-board computer,
  - cleaning, 141
- On-screen indicator, 46, 117

**P**

- Pannier rack, 25
  - changing, 121
  - cleaning, 142
  - servicing, 146
  - using, 120
- Patent seat post, 40
- Pedal, 41
  - cleaning, 140
  - servicing, 148
- Pedelec,
  - shipping 58
  - transporting, 58
- Push assist,
  - using, 127

**Q**

- Q-Loc, 31

**R**

- Rear derailleur, 41
  - servicing, 148
- Rear frame damper,
  - structure, 32, 34, 35, 102
- Rear wheel brake, 39
- Rebound adjuster, 31
- Rebound damping 30
- Riding light, 43
- Rim brake locking lever 38
- Rim, 36
  - servicing, 147

**S**

- Saddle, 25, 121
  - changing the saddle tilt, 75
  - changing the seat length, 77
  - cleaning, 142
  - determining the saddle height, 75, 77
  - using, 121
- Sag,
  - Setting wheel, 31

- Seat post, 25, 40
  - cleaning, 142
  - servicing, 147

**Shifter,**

- cleaning, 143
- servicing, 148

**Spoke nipples, 37**

- servicing, 147

**Spoke, 36****Stanchion, 31****Steering headset 26****Steering system, 26****Stem, 26**

- checking 157
- cleaning, 142
- servicing, 146

**Suspension fork,**

- cleaning, 140
- servicing, 140

**Suspension seat post, 40**

- cleaning, 140
- servicing, 147

**Switching elements,**

- cleaning, 143

**System message, 48****T****Trailer, 117****Transportation, 57****Transporting, see****Transportation****Tyre pressure, 36****Tyre size, 36****Tyres, 36**

- checking 152
- cleaning, 143
- converting 118

**Airless 118****Tubeless 118****V****Valve, 36**

- Dunlop valve, 37
- Presta valve, 37
- Schrader valve, 37

**W****Weight,**

- Shipping weight, 57
- Weight, 57

**Wheel, 36****Winter break, see Break in operation**